CANADIAN EDUCATIONAL SERIES

BELLUM GALLICUM

BOOKS V. & VI.

HENDERSON & HAGARTY.

THE
COPP CLARK CO.
LIMITED

John Fletcher



CAESAR

From a Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.

Classical Text Book Series.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM,

(BOOKS V. & VI.)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES, COMPLETE VOCABULARY, EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION SUITABLE FOR BEGINNERS, AND A SERIES OF EXERCISES FOR RE-TRANSLATION

FOR THE USE OF

CLASSES READING FOR DEPARTMENTAL AND UNIVERSITY EXAMINATIONS

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,
HEAD MASTER, ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,

AND

E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.,
CLASSICAL MASTER, HARBORD STREET COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, TORONTO,
LATE FELLOW BY COURTESY, JOHNS HOPKINS UNIV., BALTIMORE.

TORONTO:
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,
9 FRONT STREET WEST.

PREFACE.

This edition of Books V. and VI. of Caesar's Gallic War differs to some extent from former editions of Caesar. Exercises designed to simplify the first lessons in translation have been inserted; a connected précis, in Latin and mainly in Caesar's own words, of the story of Books I.-IV. has been added with a view to providing those teachers who wish it with material of a simple nature for sight work in junior classes. Headings, furnishing *the reader* at a glance with an outline of the story and its main subdivisions, have been put in with a view to arousing that interest in the subject matter without which no pupil can ever learn to "*read*" Latin properly. It is hoped that this edition will go far to intensify and quicken the Revival of Classical Study that has already begun in our schools.

J. H.
E. W. H.

TORONTO, January, 1894.



Map No. 1.
GAUL
IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
10 20 40 60 80 100
4 Long West 2 0 Longitude 2 East from 4 Greenwich 6 8 10
54
52
50
MONA I.
BRITANNIA
Cenimagni
Trinobantes
Cassi
Tamesis Fl.
Ancalites
Segontiaci
Bibroci
Cantium
(Deal)
(Dover)
GERMANIA
Batavi
Rhenus Fl.
Insula Batavorum
Vacalus
Usipetes
Tencteri
Sugambri
Ubii
Suevi
Bacenis
Silva
Cherusci
Menapii
Mosa Fl.
Eburones
Morini
Geidumni
Centrones
Grudii
Levaci
Pleumoxii
Scaldis Fl.
Nervii
Aduatuci
Aduatuca
Oppidum Aduatucorum
Mosa
Portus Itius
Atrebates
Nemetocenna
Sabis Fl.
Ambiani
Samara Fl.
Veromandui
Segni
Condrusi
Germani
Arduenna Silva
Paemani
Cisrhenani
Caeroesi
Treveri
Mosella Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
IV. 17
IV. 12
II. 18
II. 10
Moenus Fl.
Vangiones
Nemetes
Sedusii
Mediomatrici
Durocortorum
Ambivariti
Remi
Bibrax
Axona Fl.
Noviodunum
Suessiones
Matrona
Isara (Oise) Fl.
Bellovaci
Bratuspantium
Samarobriva
BELGAE
Caleti
Veliocasses
Lexovii
Unelli



Veneti
Condate
Redones
Namnetes
Andes
(Cenomani)
Vellaunodunum
Genabum
Agedicum
Lingones
Alesia
Mandubii
Latobrigi
Boii
Tulingi
Rauraci
Liger Fl.
Lemovices
Turones
Noviodunum
Avaricum
CELTAE SIVE GALLI
Pictones
Limonum
Vigena Fl.
Boii
Gorgobina
Decetia
Bibracte
Cabillonum
Matisco
Ambarri
Vesontio
Dubis Fl.
Helvetii
Lepontii
Genava
Octodurus
Salassi
Segusiavi
Elaver Fl.
OCEANUS
Santones
Lemovices
Rhodanus
Allobroges
Vienna
Gergovia
Ceutrones
ALPES
Ocelum
ATLANTICUS
Petrocorii
Duronius Fl.
Arverni
Vellavii
Isara
Vocontii
Garumna
Nitiobriges
(Eleutheri)
Cadurci
Uxellodunum
Gabali
Cavari
Cocosates
Tarusates
Sontiates
Oltis Fl.
Ruteni
CEVENNA MONS
(Arecomici)
PROVINCIA
AQUITANI
Tarnis Fl.
Tolosa
Carcasso
(Tectosages)
Narbo Martius
Druentia Fl.
Massilia
Sibuzates
Bigerriones
Garumni
Atax Fl.
MARE INTERNUM
Illiberis
PYRENAEI
HISPANIA
46
44
48
2
4
6
8

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar[1] was born on the 12th of July, B.C. 100.[2] He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely one of the oldest, but was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iülus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state. BIRTH. *His family.*

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of *praetor*, and that he died suddenly at Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, *Aurelia*, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.[3] *Caesar's father.*

---

[1]Each Roman citizen had usually *three names:* called the *praenomen* (marking the *individual*), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or *clan* , and the *cognomen* (telling the *family*). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

[2]Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 15) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 31, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronology of his life, the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

[3]*Laudes Herculis* and *Oedipus* were among his youthful poems.

Related to Marius.

His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (*flamen dialis*), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic.

Betrothed to Cossutia.

Marries Cornelia.

He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

Goes to the East and serves his first campaign.

Returns home.

In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

Tactics of Caesar.

Composition of the Senate.

The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes filled with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by that of slaves. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Senate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the mid-

way between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who prided themselves simply in tracing their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C.) and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now *Fermaco*), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of $50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

The three parties at Rome.

Caesar indicts Dolabella and Antonius.

Goes to Rhodes.

Captured by pirates.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B.C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this

Elected pontifex.

Reaction against Sylla's policy.

Elected quaestor

office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

Marries Pompeia. B.C. 67.

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole commander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who infested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithradates, king of Pontus.

Elected curule aedile.

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile*. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B.C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became *pontifex maximus*. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

Caesar pontifex maximus.

Elected praetor.

In 62 B.C., Caesar was elected *praetor*, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On

resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate*. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for *five* years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

Propraetor of Spain.

First Triumvirate.

Consul 59 B.C.

Julia Caesar's daughter, married to Pompey.

Goes to Gaul.

GALLIC CAMPAIGNS.

58 B.C. Helvetii and Ariovistus

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii, who were moving westward and attempting to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at *Basle* Ariovistus, a German King, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

B.C. 57. The Belgae

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

B.C. 56. The Veneti.

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further.

B.C. 55. The Germans and Britons.

In his fourth campaign Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain.

B.C. 54. Britain.

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul, which he suppressed 53 B.C.

B.C. 52.

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With

the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

B C. 51 In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

B.C. 50. The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops.

QUARREL WITH POMPEY.

Changes while Caesar was in Gaul. During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

Caesar crosses the Rubicon. With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at *Ilerda*, and took Massilia in Southern Gaul.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, B.C. 48, at *Pharsalia*. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Pharsalia. B.C. 48.

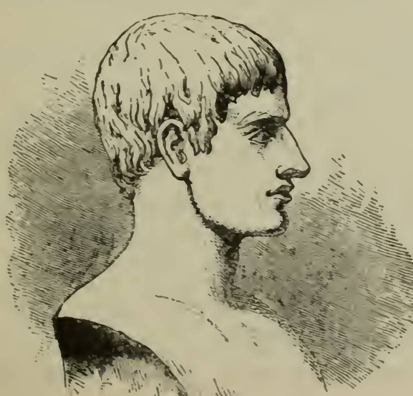
Thapsus. B.C. 46. Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master

of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda* totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man. *Munda.*

A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house. *Death of Caesar, B.C. 44.*

Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect; his features well marked and prominent: his complexion fair; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age. *Caesar's appearance.*



BRUTUS, THE MURDERER OF CAESAR.

II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) *Extant:—*

(a) Commentarii de Bello Gallico in *seven* books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) Commentarii de Bello Civili in *three* books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works:—*

(a) Anticato. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) De Analogia, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi.* Dedicated to Cicero and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) Libri Auspiciorum or *Auguralia.* Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus.*

(d) De Astris. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) Apothegmata or *Dicta Collectanea.* A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) Poemata; nearly all written in his youth. To

these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis* and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46.

SUMMARY OF CAESAR'S LIFE.

Born 100 B.C. Father dies 84 B.C.

Married Cornelia 83 B.C.

Retires from Rome owing to enmity of Sylla. Returns on Sylla's death, 78 B.C.

Wins popularity by attacks upon Senatorial party.

Goes to Rhodes to study rhetoric under Molo. Captured by pirates on his way thither.

Elected *pontifex*, *quaestor*, *curule aedile*, *pontifex maximus*, *praetor*, 70-62 B.C.

Consul B.C. 59. First Triumvirate.

Gallic Campaigns 58-50 B.C.

Quarrel with Pompey and the Senate, 49 B.C.

Defeats Pompey at **Pharsalia, 48 B.C.**—Gains control of Africa at Thapsus, 46 B.C.—Spain, at Munda, 45 B.C.

Assassinated 44 B.C.

CAESAR'S PERSONALITY.

"To be a great general was the short road to political power. Caesar's keen eye saw this, and, though too much must not be made of it, certainly it was not absent from the motives which made him eager to have the command in Gaul assigned to him. There were great men in the world before Caesar, but it seemed to good judges of his own age that he was greater than them all; and there have been great men after him, but still, compared with all before and after, so far as it is possible to compare where circumstances are so different, his name seems to good judges the greatest of all names known to history. Better men have lived, greater statesmen, perhaps greater generals, but none have so combined the qualities which we praise and wonder at. The Emperors

of Rome, the German Kaisers, probably the Russian Czars, bore or still bear his name. A month was renamed in his honour, and has retained the name of "the mightiest Julius" ever since in the languages of all Europe.

His wonderful life must be studied elsewhere, his fearless youth, his early manhood devoted to the cause of liberty and reform, his marvellous success as a general, though he only turned soldier comparatively late in life, and held no command until he was forty years old. How he became the master of Rome's destinies, and by justice and clemency showed that he was worthy to control them, and was ambitious more for his country than for himself; and how, in the height of his greatness, he was murdered by men who called him tyrant, and thought that the only right form of government was the rule of the noble and wealthy few,—of the oligarchy which bore and disgraced the name of the Roman Republic,—all this forms a history full of interest and lessons for all time.

Here (Bk. V.) we have only the story of his second invasion of Britain and one scene from the midst of his great exploit of the conquest of Gaul. It will show us something of his care for his men which so endeared him to them, of his promptitude and daring, of his supreme calm and self-control, of his fairness as an historian, of his kindness as a superior officer, slow to blame, quick to praise; and it will give us a lively picture of his enemies, their strength and weakness, their mode of warfare. Above all, it will show us the matchless strength of the Roman legions when fighting behind the entrenchments which they were so skilled in making."—*Colbeck.*

DRAMATIC CHARACTER OF BOOKS V. AND VI.

Mr. Colbeck's words quoted above aptly set forth some of the leading dramatic features of this most interesting portion of Caesar's otherwise rather dry military narrative. In books V. and VI. we realize Caesar's object in writing, *i.e.*, to give to his fellow-countrymen of his own

time, and to leave on record for all ages to come a pen-picture of himself and his army as they figured in these years of Roman aggrandizement in Western Europe. With how bold yet delicate a touch he paints

(1) himself, as a considerate and humane officer, "slow to blame, quick to praise," (see the episode of Cicero, Bk. V., 46-52, and Bk. VI., 42,); as a cool-headed strategist, a merciful conqueror, and a just judge;

(2) his subordinate officers, Cotta, Sabinus, Labienus Cicero, their faults and their virtues;

(3) his foes, the Britons, the Germans, the Gauls; their chieftains (Cassivellaunus and Ambiorix); their modes of fighting and other national characteristics;

(4) his own legionaries, with their intrepid zeal amidst fearful odds of peril and hardship;

(5) and even Pompey, not yet an avowed enemy, conceding something to "friendship and the good of the commonwealth."

These features combine to make books V. and VI. an interesting study even from the literary stand-point.

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*). *Greek settlement.* On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C. the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid

Romans. of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. *Aquae Sextiae.* Near Massilia, he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot *springs* of the neighbourhood. *Feuds.* About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above *Avignon;* and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia.* Massilia however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original Provincia, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

Cimbri and Teutones. In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. *Successive defeats of the Romans.* In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. *Cimbri and Teutones separate.* While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C. *Defeat of Teutones and Cimbri.* In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. *Intrigues of Catiline.* He and his associates attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. *Ariovistus invited.* Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in the battle of Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a great emigration. *Emigration of Helvetii.*

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of

Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this, B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helveti were on the move westward.

Caesar Consul.

Sets out to Gaul.



ROMAN SOLDIERS, FROM TRAJAN'S COLUMN.

IV.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (*phalanx*), a method very common among the

Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (*hastati*) were the youngest men, in the second (*principes*) were men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion ;

Hastati : — — — — — — — — — —
Principes : — — — — — — — — — —
Triarii : — — — — — — — — — —

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurion commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have :

Hastati :	10 manipuli,	120 men	= 20 centuries,	60 men	= 1,200
Principes :	10 "	120 "	= 20 "	60 "	= 1,200
Triarii :	10 "	60 "	= 20 "	30 "	= 600
	—		—		—
	30		60		3,000
			To every century, 20 velites		= 1,200
					—
					4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion was attached 10 *turmae*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into *three decuriae* of 10 men each ; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into three maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*). The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have

been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the first two lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani.*

The officers of the army were:

Officers.

Centurions.

(a) *Centurions* (*Centuriones*): These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

Tribunes.

(b) *Military Tribunes* (*Tribuni Militum*): These were six to each legion: hence ten centurions were under each tribune.

Legati.

(c) *Lieutenants* (*Legati*): These were next the general in command. The cavalry were under the command of the *præfecti equitum* and *decuriones.*

The *weapons* of the Roman soldier were of two kinds:

Arms.

(1) *Offensive weapons.* The ordinary soldier (*miles legionarius*) was armed with (a) *the javelin.* Of this there were four kinds: *pilum*, *iaculum*, *hasta*, *lancea*. The *pilum* was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which a strong, sharp iron point about two feet long was attached. The *iaculum* was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the *hasta* was a long spear used for stabbing. The *lancea* was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the *pilum*, while the cavalry and light armed troops, the *iaculum*, *hasta*, and *lancea.* Some of the latter carried bows (*arcus*), and arrows (*sagittae*), slings (*fundae*).

(b) *The sword* (*gladius*) was short, broad, double-edged and pointed, more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (*balteus*).

(2) *Defensive weapons.* The soldiers of the legion had: (a) *a brazen helmet* (*cassis*), surmounted with a crest; (b) *a cuirass* (*lorica*), made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates: (c) *greaves* (*ocreae*), reaching as high as the knee; (d) *a shield* either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (*scutum*), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (*clipeus*), The light armed troops had a small buckler (*parma*), and a helmet of leather (*galea*). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (*tunica*), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (*sagum*) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a broach on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum*.

The standards of the Roman army were: (a) *Aquila*, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. See Vocabulary; *Aquilifer*. To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry. *Standards.*

The *musical instruments* of the army were: (a) *tuba*, trumpet, was straight and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry. *Musical instruments.*

V.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions ; (a) *agmen primum*, or van ; (b) *exercitus*, *agmen legionum*, or main body ; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter iustum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldier carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina*.

VI.

THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates : (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the enemy ; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this ; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left ; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores; vigiliae* were night watches; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about 6¼ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents per day. Besides the regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.

EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. *Praetorium*, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the *Tribuni militum*.
3. Tents of the *Tribuni militum*.
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of *praefecti sociorum*.
5. Tents of *praefecti sociorum*.
6. Street 100 feet wide, called *principia* or *via principalis*.
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman *equites* or horse.
8. The *equites* of two Roman legions, in 10 *turmae* or troops each.
9. The *triarii* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each, forming on two different streets.
10. The two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *triarii* and *principes* of two legions.
11. The *principes* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
12. The *hastati* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *hastati* of the two Roman legions and the horse (*equites*) of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The *quintana via*, a street 50 feet wide.
17. *Quaestorium*, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of *legati*; in front of them and the *quaestorium* was the *forum* where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse (*evocati equites*).
20. The veteran foot (*evocati pedites*).
21. The horse of the consular life guards (*ablecti equites*).
22. The foot of the consular life guards (*ablecti pedites*).
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
24. A street, 50 feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii equites*, a part of the allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. *Extraordinarii pedites*, a part of the allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart (*vallum*).
30. Ditch (*fossa*), 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. *Porta principalis dextra*.
32. *Porta principalis sinistra*.
33. *Porta decumana*.
34. *Porta praetoria*.
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.

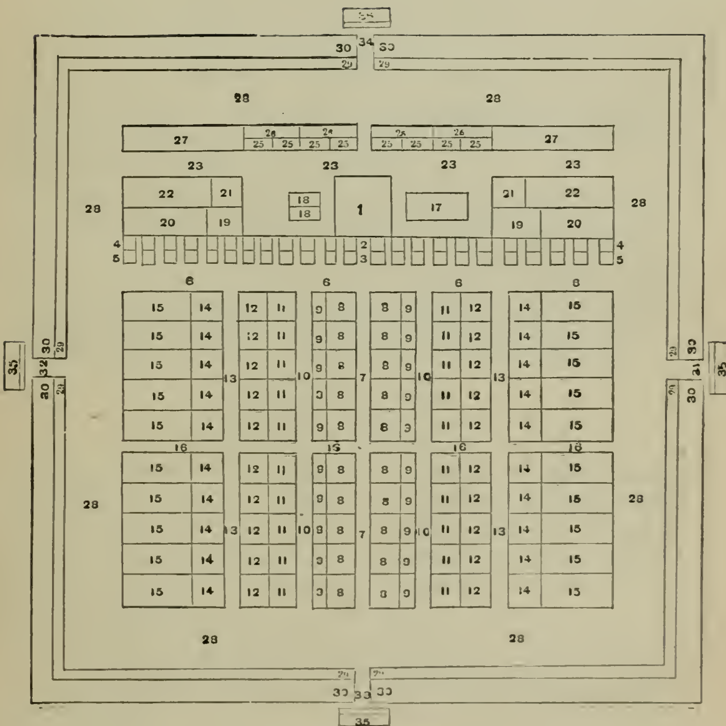


DIAGRAM OF CAMP.

SYNOPSIS OF BOOKS I.-IV.,

ADAPTED FOR BEGINNERS.

FIRST CAMPAIGN—58 B.C.

Caesar's Description of Gaul.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partes tres, quarum unam incŏlunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui Galli appellantur. Hi omnes linguā, institutis, lēgibus inter se diffĕrunt.

Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen dīvĭdit ; a Belgis Matrŏna et Sēquăna. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptereā quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciae longissimē absunt minimēque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant. Proximi sunt Germānis qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt, quibuscum Belgae continenter bellum gerunt. Helvetii relĭquos Gallos virtutĕ praecēdunt.

THE HELVETIAN WAR.

Conspiracy of Orgetorix.

Messala et Pisone consŭlibus, (58 B.C.) Orgetorix, qui nobilissimus Helvetiorum fuit, civitati persuasit ut e finibus suis excederent. Hoc fecit regni cupiditate inductus. Castico, Sequano, itemque Dumnorigi, Aeduo, ut regnum in civitatibus suis occuparent persuadet. Hi per tres potentissimos populos totīus Galliae sese potiri posse spērant.

Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Sed Orgetorix, cum civitas suum ius exsequi conaretur, mortuus est. Ut Helvetii arbitrantur, sibi mortem conscivit.

The Helvetii leave home and are conquered.

Post eius mortem, nihilomĭnus Helvetii e finibus suis excedere conati sunt. Per Provinciam iter facere volebant. Caesar, qui tum in Gallia citeriore erat, in Galliam ulteriorem cum legionibus

quinque contendit et pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, rescindi iussit. Deinde a lacu Lemanno ad montem Iuram murum fossamque perducit. Ea spe deiecti, per Sequanos Helvetii iter fecerunt. In fines Aeduorum pervenerunt eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui autem socii et amici Populi Romani erant. Caesar Helvetios secutus flumen Ararim transeuntes in fugam dedit.

Interea Dumnorigi, Aeduo, custodes Caesar ponit quod civitatem suam ne frumentum daret deterrēret. Helvetii, apud Bibracte, Aeduorum oppidum, iterum superati, pacem petiērunt atque domum reverti iussi sunt.

THE GERMAN WAR.

Ariovistus expelled from Gaul.

Eodem anno Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, Rhenum exercitum transduxit atque superbe et crudeliter Gallis imperabat. Galli a Caesare auxilium petunt. Ariovistum, proelio facto, Rhenum transire et domum redire Caesar coegit.

Ita unā aestate, duobus maximis bellis confectis, Caesar in citeriorem Galliam ad conventūs agendos profectus est.

SECOND CAMPAIGN—57 B.C.

THE BELGIAN WAR.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, ad eum rumores afferebantur, omnes Belgas contra Populum Romānum coniurare. His nuntiis commotus, duas novas lĕgiones conscripsit et initā aestate in ulteriorem Galliam misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervēnit. Eo cum de improviso venisset, Remi legatos miserunt et se suaque omnia in potestatem Populi Romāni permisērunt.

Flumen Axŏnam Caesar exercitum transduxit et cum Belgae Bibrax, oppidum Remorum, expugnare conarentur, eos superavit.

Fierce engagement with the Nervii.

Suessionibus Bellovacisque in deditionem acceptis, in fines Nerviorum iter fecit. Cum iis proelium apud flumen Sabim committit. Quo in proelio ubi Caesar rem esse in angusto vīdit, scutum militi detraxit et in primam aciem processit. Cuius adventu spes

illata est et proelium redintegratum. Hostes vero etiam in extremā spe magnam virtutem praestiterunt. Jacentibus enim suis insistebant atque ex eorum corporibus pugnabant. Hoc proelio prope ad internecionem gens ac nomen Nerviorum redactum est.

Omni Galliā pacatā, in Italiam Caesar profectus est.

THIRD CAMPAIGN—56 B.C.

THE VENETIAN WAR.

Cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Venĕti, cuius est civitatis amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae, Silium et Velanium, tribunos militum, retinent. Caesar, ab Crasso legato certior factus, naves aedificari in flumine Ligere iussit. Veneti bellum parant.

Strength of the Venetian ships.

Ipsorum naves ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae sunt. Totae sunt factae ex robore, atque carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium. Neque enim his nostrae rostro nocēre poterant, tanta in iis erat firmitudo.

Victory for Caesar.

Una tamen res magno usui fuit nostris, falces praeacutae longuriis insertae. His funes, qui antennas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi sunt. Navigio deinde remis incitato, funes praerumpebantur, antennae concidebant. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant. Quo proelio bellum Veneticum confectum est.

FOURTH CAMPAIGN—55 B.C.

CAESAR CROSSES THE RHINE.

Eā quae secuta est hieme, Pompeio et Crasso consulibus, Usipetes et Tencteri, Germani, flumen Rhenum transierunt. Causa transeundi fuit quod ab Suebis bello premebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum. Haud multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt. Vinum ad se importari non sinunt. Usipetes et Tencteri, ab Suebis expulsi, agros et aedificia Menapiorum, qui ad utramque ripam flumine incolebant, occupaverunt.

His de rebus Caesar certior factus, atque infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Germanis superatis, pontem trans Rhenum faciendum curavit et exercitum transduxit. Diebus decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

FIRST ROMAN INVASION OF BRITAIN.

Preliminary enquiries.

Exiguā parte aestatis relĭquā, Caesar tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, in omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata esse auxilia intellegebat. Mercatoribus ad se vocatis, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli habērent, neque qui essent idonei portūs, reperire poterat.

C. Volusenum cum nāvi longā ad haec cognoscenda praemittit. Huic mandat ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se revertatur.

Caesar repairs to the coast—The Britons thither send ambassadors.

Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Mōrĭnos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique et classem quam ad Venĕticum bellum effecerat convenire iubet. Interim legati ab Britannis ad eum veniunt et obsides dare pollicentur. Līberāliter pollicitus, eos dŏmum remittit.

Caesar crosses the Channel.

Nactus idoneam ad nāvigandum tempestatem, nāvibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis, tertiā fere vigiliā solvit. Equites in ulteriorem portum, qui ex eo lŏco ab mīlibus passuum octo aberat, progrĕdi et ibi naves onerarias duodeviginti conscendere iussit. Ipse horā circiter diei quartā cum primis navibus Britanniam attĭgit.

His landing opposed.

Ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Ad horam nonam expectavit. Tum ventum et aestum nactus secundum, dăto signo, sublātis ancŏris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus est. Barbări, consilio eius cognĭto, cum equitatu, essedariis, relĭquis copiis subsecuti, nostros ēgrĕdi probibebant.

Fight on the shore—Brave conduct of a centurion.

Summa erat difficultas egrediendi. Nostri inusitato Britannorum genere pugnae perterriti non eādem alacritate, qua uti consuērant, utebantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit naves longas removeri ab onerariis, et remis incitari iussit. Navium figūrā et remorum motu permoti, barbari pĕdem rĕtŭlērunt. Nostris cunctantibus, is qui decimae lĕgionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, "Desilīte," inquit, "milites, nĭsi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere. Ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc cum voce magnā dixisset, se ex navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri universi ex navi desiluerunt. Simul in arido constiterunt, in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt. Longius vero prosequi non potuērunt quod equites insulam capere non potuĕrant.

The Britons pardoned,

Hostes proelio superati, ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt. Caesar ignoscere se imprudentiae dixit et obsides imperavit.

but, learning of Caesar's difficulties, they renew the war.

Die quarto postquam in Britanniam Caesar vēnit, naves octodecim, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae, tempestas coorta est atque continentem petere coactae sunt. Eādem nocte naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportaverat, tempestas afflictabat.

Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae rebellionem fecerunt.

Caesar again suppresses them, and returns to the continent.

At Caesar naves omnes, praeter duodecim quae amissae erant, refecit et, Britannis iterum proelio superatis, obsidum numerum duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit. Paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit. Quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt.

EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION

INTRODUCTORY TO

BOOK V.

Exercise 1.

1. Domitius et Claudius consules erant.

2. Domitio et Claudio consulibus, Caesar in Italiam discedit.

3. Legātos lĕgionibus praefecerat.

4. Discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, his legatis imperat ut nāves aedificarent.

5. Legatos naves aedificare iubet Caesar.

6. Naves quam plurimas aedificare iussi sunt legati.

Exercise 2.

1. Legati, quos legionibus praefecerat, naves aedificant veteresque reficiunt.

2. Legatis naves aedificandae sunt veteresque reficiendae.

3. Naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curant legati.

4. Legatos praefecit exercitui ad naves aedificandas.

5. Naves ab legatis aedificatae sunt.

6. Ad celeritatem onerandi paulo facit humiliores; ad onera transportanda latiores.

7. In nostro mari navibus humilibus atque latis non utimur.

8. Has naves facit humiliores atque latiores quam quae sunt in nostro mari.

9. Humiliores eas faciunt quam quibus utimur.

10. Latioribus navibus Galli in Oceăno ūti consuēvērunt.

Exercise 3.

1. Multae res sunt usui hominibus ad naves aedificandas.

2. Ea quae sunt usui ad armandas naves ex Hispāniā apportari iubet.

3. Naves omnes actuarias fiĕri imperat.

4. Actuarias eas facere legatos iubet.

5. Militibus ŭti naves actuarias faciant imperat.

6. Quam ad rem humilitas adiuvat.

Exercise 4.

1. Conventūs iam peracti erant. In Illyricum proficiscitur Caesar.

2. Conventibus peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur.

3. Pirustae partem provinciae vastabant.

4. Parte provinciae a Pirustis vastata, Caesar profectus est.

5. Pirustas provinciam vastare audiebat.

6. Pars provinciae vastabatur a Pirustis.

7. Partem provinciae vastari audiebat.

8. Pars iam vastata erat. Partem vastatam esse audivit.

Exercise 5.

1. Eo pervēnit. Eo cum vēnisset, civitatibus ut milites dărent imperat. Hos milites certum in locum ad se convenire iubet.

2. Quae res Pirustis nuntiată est. Legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. Hi ita cum eo agunt *(plead)*; "Nihil earum rerum publico factum est consilio. Nos parati sumus de iniuriis satisfacere."

3. Legatos mittunt qui haec docent.

4. Legatos mittunt qui haec doceant.

5. Docent nihil factum esse; sese paratos esse satisfacere.

6. Qua re nuntiatā, Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil publico factum esse consilio. Sese paratos esse de iuiuriis satisfacere demonstrant.

Exercise 6.

1. Perceptă est oratio eorum. Caesar obsides imperat.

2. Pirustis ut obsides dărent imperat. Eos ad se adduci iubet.

3. "Nisi," inquit, "ita feceritis, ego bello vos persequar."

4. Perceptā hāc oratione, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad se adduci iubet. Nisi ita fecissent se bello eos persecuturum esse demonstravit.

5. Obsidibus adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat qui litem aestiment (*note the mood*) poenamque constituant.

6. Hi sunt arbitri qui litem aestimant (*note the mood*) poenamque constituant.

Exercise 7. (*Chap 8.*)

1. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente relicto, ipse ad solis occasum naves solvit. Leni Africo provectus est. Mediā circiter nocte, ventus intermittitur. Vento intermisso cursum non tenet et longius aestu delatus est. Ortā luce, sub sinistram (*on his left*) Britanniam relictam conspexit.

2. Caesar legato, quid fieri velit, ostendit.

3. Hoc est quod Caesar vult.

4. Ea, quae in Gallia gerebantur, Labienus cognovit.

5. Quae in Gallia gererentur cognovit.

6. Relictus est ut, quae in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret et consilium pro tempore caperet.

Exercise 8. (*Chap. 9.*)

1. Militum virtus laudata est ab imperatōre.

2. Laudanda est militum virtus imperatori.

3. Quo in loco hostium copiae consederunt ?

4. Ex captivis cognovit quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent.

5. Cohortibus decem ad mare relictis, progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copias conspicatus est.

6. Illi, ad flumen progressi, proelium committere coeperunt.

7. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nact munītum.

8. At milites, testudine factā, eos ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes Caesar prosequi vetuit.

9. Postrīdie eius diei milites equitesque misit ut eos persequerentur.

10. Naves afflictae sunt quod neque ancorae subsistebant neque nautae vim tempestatis pati poterant.

11. His aliquantum itineris progressis, equites ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent (*note the subjunctive*) superiore nocte, coortā tempestate, naves afflictas esse, quod neque ancorae subsisterent neque nautae vim tempestatis pati possent.



C. JULIUS CAESAR.

C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
COMMENTARIORUM
LIBER QUINTUS.

CH. 1-7.—CAESAR IN GAUL PREPARES FOR THE 2ND INVASION OF BRITAIN; WINTER OF 55–54 B.C.

CH. 8-23.—SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

CH. 24-58.—ATTACK ON THE WINTER CAMPS IN GAUL.

Caesar leaves directions for building a fleet on the coast. Departs for Illyricum to quiet the Pirustae, 1. Returns and finds satisfactory progress. Marches against the Treveri, 2-4. Caesar, at Portus Itius, prepares to sail, 5. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, gives trouble and is slain, 6, 7.

Caesar orders a fleet to be built.

I.—L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consŭlibus discēdens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannīs facere consuērat, legātis impĕrat, quos lĕgionibus praefecerat, ŭtı, quam plurimas possent, hieme nāves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum mŏdum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores,

quam quibus in nostro mări uti consuevimus, atque id eo măgis, quod propter crēbras commutationes aestuum mĭnus magnos ibi fluctūs fiĕri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in relĭquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias impĕrat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiŭvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispānia adportari iŭbet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in lŏcum convenire iubet. Quā rē nuntiatā Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dŏceant, nĭhil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Perceptā oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem addūci iubet; nĭsĭ ĭta fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui lītem aestiment poenamque constituant.

The Pirustae give hostages.

II.—His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summā omnium rerum inŏpiā circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quīn paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus, iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter mīlium passuum triginta a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, relīquit. Ipse cum lĕgionibus expedītīs quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fīnes Trēvĕrorum proficiscitur, quod hi nĕque ad concilia vĕniebant neque imperio parebant Germānosque Transrhenānos sollicitare dicebantur.

The soldiers praised for their zeal. Fleet ordered to rendezvous at Portus Itius.

III.—Haec cīvitās longe plurimum totīus Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet cōpias pĕditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et

The Treveri and their rival Chieftains.

Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treveris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per mĕdios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed postĕāquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnērunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consŭlere non possent: veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio continēret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam lāberetur: itaque esse civitatem in suā potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fĭdei permissurum.

Cingetorix honored and Indutiomarus offended.

IV.—Caesar, etsi intellegebat, quā de causā ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterrēret, tămen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus vĕnire iussit. His adductis, in iis fīlio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consōlatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, ŭti in officio manēret; nĭhilo tamen sēcius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fiĕri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valēre, cuius tam ēgrĕgiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tŭlit factum grăviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiam inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimīco in nos animo fuisset, multo grăvius hoc dolōre exarsit.

Caesar prepares to sail.

V.—His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervĕnit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenēre non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, re-

vertisse; relĭquas paratas ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invĕnit. Eodem equitatus totīus Galliae convĕnit numero milium quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fĭdem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum lŏco secum dūcere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Dumnorix gives trouble.

VI.—Erat unā cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo prĕcibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vīdit, omni spe impetrandi ademptā, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos, hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

Death of Dumnorix.

VII.—Quā re cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum

equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Quā re nuntiatā, Caesar intermissā profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat ; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt ; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—CH. 8-23.

Caesar's second landing in Britain. 54 B.C.

VIII.—His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu ortā luce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus ; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium peterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

The Britons oppose his march inland.

IX.—Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli

atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causā iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

Bad news of the fleet.

X.—Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maximā coortā tempestate prope omnes naves adflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent : itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Labienus builds new ships.

XI.—His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur ; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessiri iubet ; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem,

unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summā imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissā Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

Cassivellaunus.

DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN.—CH. 12, 13, 14.

The people.

XII.—Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoriā proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae causā ex Belgis transierant—qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt—et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

The island.

XIII.—Insula naturā triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia est, in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert

illorum opinio, septingentorum milium. Tertium est contrà septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

Manners and customs.

XIV.—Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, qua regio est maritima omnis neque multum a Gallicā differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

THE WAR CONTINUES.

More fighting; a surprise; death of a tribune.

XV.—Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso a spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

British mode of fighting.

XVI.—Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio

dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

The Britons repulsed.

XVII.—Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causā tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

XVIII.—Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit ; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

XIX.—Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos

iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causā se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes submit to Caesar.

XX.—Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adulēscens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubratium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

So do other tribes.

XXI.—Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossā munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causā convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

A British "town."

Four Kentish kings defeated.

XXII.—Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuntios mittit atque



Position of Caesar's Winter Camps, B.C. 54-53. See Bk. V. Ch. 24.

his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione factā multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cassivellaunus treats of peace.

XXIII.—Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur, at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatūs expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac, summā tranquillitate consecutā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

CAESAR AGAIN IN GAUL—ATTACK ON THE WINTER CAMPS—WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

XXIV.—Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samarobrivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Caio Fabio legato dedit, alteram in Nervios Quinto Ciceroni, tertiam in Esubios Lucio Roscio; quartam in

Caesar distributes his legions for the winter.

Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Treverorum hiemare iussit; tres in Bellovacis collocavit; his Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes quinque in Eburones, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facillime inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit. Atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

Murder of Tasgetius.

XXV.—Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem inimici multis palam ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque operā cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, eos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoreque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

SABINUS AND COTTA ATTACKED.—CH. 26, 27.

Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus.

XXVI.—Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui, cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsi suos concitaverunt subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus

emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperatā re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodirent; habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

Negotiations with the Gauls.

XXVII.—Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causā Caius Arpineius eques Romanus, familiaris Quinti Titurii, et Quintus Iunius ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consuerat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est; Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius operā stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate suā fecisse, sed coactu civitatis, suaque esse eiusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat. Sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperandā communi libertate consilium initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris: monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc adfore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se polliceri et iureiurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines daturum. Quod cum faciat et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam referre. Hāc oratione habitā discedit Ambiorix.

Ambiorix tenders advice.

DISPUTE BETWEEN SABINUS AND COTTA.—CH. 28—31.

A council of war.

XXVIII.—Arpineius et Iunius, quae audierunt, ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaque inter eos exsistit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantasvis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus inlatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

Cotta favors delay.

Sabinus urges a hasty retreat.

XXIX.—Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse. Non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris extincta. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

XXX.—Hāc in utramque partem disputatione habitā, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, *Vincite*, inquit, *si ita*

vultis, Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; *neque is sum*, inquit, *qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non reiecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.*

Sabinus prevails. The counsel of the enemy is accepted.

XXXI.—Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur, prima luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

Departure from camp.

ARMY OF SABINUS AND COTTA MASSACRED—CH. 32-37.

The ambuscade.

XXXII.—At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipertito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus passuum circiter duobus Romanorum adventum expectabant, et cum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

Confusion of Sabinus; Cotta's valor.

XXXIII.—Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere, haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset, haec

posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat: et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna militis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnandum alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quae quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

The battle.

XXXIV.—At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare iusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaecumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et studio pugnandi pares nostri; tametsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant: levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse; rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

Tactics of the enemy.

XXXV.—Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti vitare poterant.

Bravery of the Romans.

Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam

pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum Tito Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur; Quintus Lucanius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; Lucius Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda vulneratur.

Cotta wounded.

XXXVI.—His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Cnaeum Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

Sabinus again trapped.

XXXVII.—Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

The massacre.

Death of Sabinus and Cotta.

Q. CICERO BESIEGED BY THE NERVII, EBURONES AND ADUATUCI. CH. 38-52.

Activity of Ambiorix.

XXXVIII.—Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditatumque sese subsequi iubet. Re demonstrata Aduatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis, quas acceperint, iniuriis occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuadet.

XXXIX.—Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

Cicero's camp surrounded.

Stubborn resistance of the Romans.

XL.—Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae, magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materia, quam munitionis causā comportaverant, turres admodum centum et viginti excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eadem ratione, qua pridie, ab nostris resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximi

diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

Bold reply of Cicero.

XLI.—Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciendae causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quicquam ab his praesidii sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint; licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse consuetudinem populi Romani, accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant; sperare pro eius iustitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

The Nervii encircle the camp with rampart and trench.

XLII.—Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum novem et fossa pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine ab nobis cognoverant et, quos de exercitu habebant captivos, ab his docebantur, sed nulla ferramentorum copia, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire nitebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum quindecim in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt, reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas idem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

The Gauls assault the camp.

XLIII.—Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta iacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, iacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehen-

derunt et venti magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellegerent, non modo demigrandi causā de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quodam loco turri adactā et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

but are repulsed.

XLIV.—Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones qui primis ordinibus adpropinquarent, Titus Pulio et Lucius Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de locis summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, *Quid dubitas*, inquit, *Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis expectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.* Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, in eam irrumpit. Ne Vorenus quidem sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pulio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit; quo percusso et exanimato, hunc scutis protegunt, in hostem tela universi coniciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulione omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Gladio

Bravery of two centurions.

comminus rem gerit Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio, atque ambo incolumes compluribus interfectis summā cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

News conveyed to Caesar by a Gallic slave.

XLV.—Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in iaculo illigatas effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

Caesar's prompt measures for relief.

XLVI.—Caesar acceptis litteris horā circiter undecimā diei statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum viginti quinque; iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad Caium Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatum fines legionem adducat, qua sibi scit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno, si reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat, Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat expectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

XLVII.—Horā circiter tertiā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die milia passuum viginti procedit. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legionemque attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publica, sfrumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causā devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius,

ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus, interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae venissent, veritus, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, ut hostium impetum sustinere posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit, docet, omnes peditatus equitatusque copias Treverorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

Labienus unable to join him.

XLVIII.—Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae apud Ciceronem gerantur quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistolā ad amentum deligatā intra munitionem castrorum abiciat. In litteris scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter adfore ; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostris biduo animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat maximāque omnes laetitiā adficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

Caesar's march to the rescue.

A letter from Caesar.

Joy in Cicero's camp.

XLIX.—Galli re cognitā per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec erant armata circiter milia quadraginta. Cicero datā facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat ; hunc admonet, iter caute diligenterque faciat ; perscribit in litteris, hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar adlatis suos facit certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat. Postero die luce prima movet castra et

The Gauls go to meet Caesar,

circiter milia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res, tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare ; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat. Consedit et, quam aequissimo loco potest, castra communit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit eo consilio, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissime itinere valles transire possit.

who encamps,

L.—Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utrique sese suo loco continent, Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, expectabant, Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet ; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere iubet ; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoris iubet.

and entices them to battle.

LI.—Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias traducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praeconibusque circummissis pronuntiari iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere ; post id tempus non fore potestatem ; ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis, singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causā resisteret nemo, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

The Gauls repulsed by a sortie.

Cicero relieved; Caesar on the scene praising and consoling.

LII.—Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; legione productā cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque collaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat; quod detrimentum culpā et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

LABIENUS AND THE TREVERI.—CH. 53-58.

News of Caesar's victory conveyed to Labienus.

LIII.—Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter sexginta, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hac famā ad Treveros perlatā, Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit.

Caesar's precautions for the winter.

Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant.

Disturbed state of Gaul.

Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acciperet. In his ab Lucio Roscio, quem legioni tertiae decimae

praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum quae Armoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causā convenisse neque longius milia passuum octo ab hibernis suis afuisse, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

Caesar stands at bay.

LIV.—At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, denuntiaret, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat (cuius frater Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris, cuiusque maiores regnum obtinuerant) interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causā legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ei, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

Indutiomarus fails to arouse the Germans.

LV.—Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā parte exercitus nostri interfectā multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tencterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit.

But the Gauls flock to his standard.

Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

LVI.—Ubi intellexit, ultro ad se veniri, alterā ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientiā facinoris instigari, alterā Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli; quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus convenit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit, praecipit.

An armed council of the Gauls.

LVII.—Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognitā, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causā; equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coniciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

Labienus sets a trap for Indutiomarus.

LVIII.—Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coniciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati

discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis—quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat—unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod morā reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hāc re cognitā omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

A sortie; Indutiomarus slain.

The revolt collapses.

EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION

INTRODUCTORY TO

BOOK VI.

Exercise 1.

1. Multis de causis Caesar motum Galliae exspectat.
2. Per legātos delectum habēre instituit.
3. Ab Pompeio petit ut milites ad signa convenire iubēret.
4. Pompeius ad urbem cum imperio remanebat.
5. Magni interĕrat magnas vidēri facultates Italiae.
6. Hoc Pompeius reipublicae et amicitiae tribuit.
7. Ita celeriter confectus est delectus et tres lĕgiones constitutae.
8. Multum populi Romani disciplina poterat.

Exercise 2.

1. Magni interest. Magni interesse existimavit.
2. Confectus est delectus. Quid potest disciplina Romanorum?
3. Delectu confecto, Gallos docuit quid disciplina posset.
4. Adductae sunt legiones tres. Legionibus tribus adductis duplicatus est cohortium numerus.
5. Interfecto Indutiomaro, Trevĕri Germanos sollicitant; pecuniam pollicentur; Ambiorigem sibi adiungunt.
6. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, hieme nondum confectă, cum legionibus quattuor in fines Nerviorum contendit.
7. Vastatis eorum agris, in deditionem venire atque obsides dăre eos coēgit.
8. Eo confecto negotio, in hiberna legiones reduxit.

Exercise 3.

1. Undique bellum parabatur. Bellum undique parari videbat.

2. Senŏnes ad imperatum non veniunt. Senones non venire intellegebat, consilia cum finitimis communicare ; Germanos a Treveris sollicitari.

3. A Caesare de bello cogitatum est.

4. Mihi de bello cogitandum (est). Sibi de bello cogitandum esse putavit.

5. Omnia postponenda sunt ; concilium Lutetiam transferendum.

Exercise 4. *(See Chaps. 3 and 4.)*

1. Concilium Galliae primo vere indictum est. Eo Senŏnes, Carnutes Trĕvĕrique non veniunt.

2. Hoc initium belli esse arbitratus, concilium ad Parisios, qui confines erant Senonibus, transfert.

3. Concilium Lutetiam translatum est. Ad oppidum Parisiorum concilium transferre Caesar constituit.

4. Eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur.

5. Cognito eius adventu, Acco qui princeps fuit, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenire.

6. Iis id conantibus adesse Romanos nuntiatur.

7. Legatos deprecandi causā mittunt.

8. Libenter Caesar, petentibus Aeduis, dat veniam.

9. Eodem Carnutes legatos mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis. Eadem ferunt responsa.

Exercise 5. *(See Chaps. 5 and 6.)*

CAESAR SUBDUES THE MENAPII.

Hac parte Galliae pacata, in bellum Trevĕrorum insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci iubet. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, paludibus silvisque munīti. Qui uni legatos numquam miserant. Cum his erat hospitium Ambiorigi. Item per Trevĕros venerat Germanis in amicitiam.

Haec illi detrahenda esse auxilia existimabat. Hoc inito consilio, impedimenta duasque legiones in Trevĕros mittit. Ipse cum legionibus expedītis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Menapii, aedificiis vicisque incensis, magnoque hominum atque pecŏris capto numero, legatos ad eum pacis petendae causā mittunt.

Exercise 6. *(Chaps. 6 and 7.)*

1. Magno hominum numero potītur.

2. "Vos hostium habebo numero, si Ambiorigem finibus vestris recēperitis."

3. Hostium eos se habiturum esse numero, si Ambiorigem finibus suis recēpissent dixit.

4. Commium custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit.

5. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Trevĕri magnis coactis copiis Labienum adoriri parabant, iamque ab eo non longē aberant, cum duas venisse legiones cognoscunt. Positis castris auxilia exspectare constituunt.

6. Temeritate hostium erit aliqua dimicandi facultas.

7. Fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem speravit Labienus.

Exercise 7. *(Chap. 7.)*

1. Praesidium cohortium impedimentis relictum est.

2. Hostes flumen non transibunt. Neque hostes transituros existimabat.

3. Loquitur in consilio palam. "Germani," inquit, "adpropinquant. Ego meas exercitūsque fortunas in dubium non devocabo et cras *(to-morrow)* castra movebo."

4. Germanos dixit adpropinquare. Sese suas exercitūsque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum et postero die castra moturum.

5. Quid est Labieni consilii? Labienus quid sui sit consilii proponit.

6. Ut timōris det suspicionem, magno strepitu castra movēri iubet.

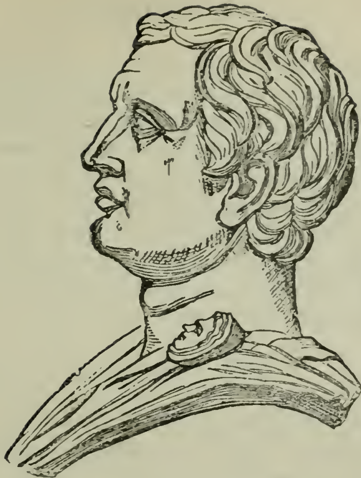
7. Quo facilius timoris det suspicionem, maiore, quam consuetudo fert, strepitu castra moveri iubet.

Exercise 8. *(Chap 8.)*

LABIENUS ROUTS THE TREVERI.

Galli, cohortati inter se, ne praedam ex manibus dimitterent flumen transire non dubitant. (Longum esse dixerunt auxilium exspectare, neque suam pati dignitatem ut exiguam manum adoriri non audeant). Labienus, usus simulatione itineris, progrediebatur. Tum, "Habetis," inquit, "milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem iniquo loco tenetis: praestate ducibus nobis virtutem vestram atque Caesarem adesse existimate."

Nostri clamore sublato hostes in fugam coniēcērunt. Quos, Labienus consectatus, magno mumero interfecto, compluribus captis, civitatem rĕcēpit. Caesar, postquam in Treveros vēnit, Rhenum transire constituit.



CN. POMPEIUS MAGNUS, CAESAR'S RIVAL.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIORUM

LIBER SEXTUS.

SIXTH CAMPAIGN—53 *B.C.*—CAESAR BESET BY REBELLIOUS GAULS AND THEIR GERMAN ALLIES.

CH. 1-8.—COMMOTIONS LED BY THE TREVERI.

CH. 9-28.—CAESAR A SECOND TIME CROSSES THE RHINE.

CH. 29-44.—CAESAR PUNISHES THE REBELS AND PURSUES AMBIORIX.

As an object lesson to the Gauls Caesar increases his forces.

I.—Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum exspectans per Marcum Silanum, Caium Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium legātos dilectum habere instituit; simul ab Cnaeo Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio rei publicae causā re-

manēret, quos ex Cisalpina Gallia consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iubēret, magni interesse etiam in relĭquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans, tantas vidēri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore sarciri, sed etiam maioribus augēri copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeius et rei publicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos dilectu tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis lĕgionibus duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit quid populi Romani disciplīna atque opes possent.

The Treveri stir up war, aided by Ambiorix.

II.—Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos a Trevĕris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germānos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. Cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus iure iurando inter se confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia căvent; Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari vidēret, Nervios, Aduatucos, Menapios adiunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germānis esse in armis, Senŏnes ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

Caesar quells the Nervii and calls a council at Paris.

III.—Itaque nondum hieme confectā proximis quattuor coactis lĕgionibus, de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecŏris atque hominum numero capto atque eā praedā militibus concessā vastatisque agris in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coēgit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vēre, ut instituerat, indicto, cum relĭqui praeter Senones, Carnutes Treverosque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus civitatemque patrum memoriā coniunxerant, sed ab hoc consilio afuisse existimabantur. Hāc re pro suggestu pronuntiatā eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervĕnit.

The Senones submit.

IV.—Cognito eius adventu Acco, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, iŭbet in oppida multitudinem convenire. Conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiatur. Necessario sententia desistunt legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antīquitus erat in fĭde civitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod aestīvum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis esse arbitratur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientēla: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

Likewise the Carnutes.

March against the Menapii.

V.—Hac parte Galliae pacatā totus et mente et animo in bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senŏnum secum proficisci iubet, ne quis aut ex huius iracundia aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis motus exsistat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat, Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua eius consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; ĭtem per Treveros vēnisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret, ne dēspērātā salute aut se in Menapios abdĕret aut cum Transrhenanis congredi cogeretur. Hoc inĭto consilio totīus exercitūs impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit duasque ad eum lĕgiones proficisci iŭbet; ipse cum legionibus expedītis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi nullā coactā manu loci praesidio freti in silvas paludesque confugiunt suaque eodem conferunt.

The Menapii detached from Ambiorix.

VI.—Caesar partītis copiis cum Caio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus adit tripertito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potītur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut eius legatos finibus suis recepissent. His confirmatis

rebus Commium Atrebătem cum equitatu custodis lŏco in Menapiis relinquit, ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

Labienus and the Treveri.

VII.—Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant; iamque ab eo non longius bidui vĭa aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis castris a milibus passuum quindecim auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt. Labienus hostium cognito consilio, sperans temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso spatio castra communit. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis. Hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabat. Augebatur auxiliorum cotīdie spes. Loquitur in consilio palam, quoniam Germani adpropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum et postero die prima luce castra moturum. Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura cogebat. Labienus noctu tribunis militum primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det suspicionem, maiore strepitu et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri iubet. His rebus fugae similem profectionem effecit. Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

Victory of Labienus.

VIII.—Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli cohortati inter se, "ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent; longum esse perterritis Romanis Germanorum auxilium exspectare, neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant," flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris placide progrediebatur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulo quodam collocatis, *Habetis*, inquit, *milites*, *quam petistis*, *facultatem: hostem impedito atque*

iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram cernere existimate. Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi iubet et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem, quos fugere credebant, infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas silvas petiverunt, Quos Labienus equitatu consectatus, magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post diebus civitatem recepit. Nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Treverorum fuga sese domum receperunt. Cum his propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

CAESAR A SECOND TIME CROSSES THE RHINE —CH. 9-28.

IX.—Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros vēnit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit ; quarum una erat, quod auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota atque instituta ratione magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dĕderant atque in dēditionem venerant purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant, neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa neque ab se fidem laesam ; petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant ; si amplius obsidum vellet, dare pollicentur. Cognita Caesar causa reperit, ab Suebis auxilia missa esse ; Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit, aditus viasque in Suebos perquirit.

The Suebi retreat before him.

X.—Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum

deligit; Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans barbaros atque imperītos homines inopia cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci; mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant, quaeque apud eos gerantur, cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt et paucis diebus intermissis referunt: Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coēgissent, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine, quae appellatur Bacenis; hanc longe introrsus pertinere et pro nativo muro obiectam Cheruscos ab Suebis Suebosque ab Cheruscis iniuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad eius initium silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse.

GAUL AND GERMANY COMPARED. THE GAULS—CH. 11-20.

Factions and parties in Gaul.

XI.—Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et, quo differant hae nationes inter sese, proponere. In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. Itaque eius rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii egeret: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae; namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

The rivals for supremacy, Aedui and Sequani.

XII.—Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani. Hi cum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Aeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adiunxerant eosque ad se magnis iacturis pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Aeduorum interfecta tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduis ad se traducerent obsidesque ab iis principum

filios acciperent et publice iurare cogerent, nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. Qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus auxilii petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus imperfecta re redierat. Adventū Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata, Sequani principatum dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successerant; quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Aeduis coniungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Aedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

XIII.—In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo. Nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus, quibus in hos eadem omnia sunt iura, quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur: ad eos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt, et si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de finibus controversia est, iidem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant, neque his petentibus ius redditur neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem.

Two classes: the Druids and the Equites or Nobles.

The Druids.

Their power.

Hoc mortuo aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, nonnunquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causa proficiscuntur.

Their training.

XIV.—Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt, militiae vacationem omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicenos in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere ; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant.

Their beliefs.

In primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et iuventuti tradunt.

The Nobles.

XV.—Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, ŭti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent) omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

Religion of the Gauls.

XVI.—Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus, atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolaturos

vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur, publiceque eiusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succensis circumventi flamma exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxia sint comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

Their gods.

XVII.—Deum maxime Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plurima simulacra, hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent; cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis conspicari licet; neque saepe accidit, ut neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

XVIII.—Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedīcant idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies natales et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt.

Marriage and funeral customs.

XIX.—Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatione facta cum dotibus communicant. Huius omnis pecuniae coniunctim ratio habetur fructusque servantur; uter eorum

vita superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illustriore loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, iustis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

Laws against gossiping.

XX.—Quae civitates commodius suam rem publicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum si quis quid de re publica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat neve cum quo alio communicet, quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus, quae visa sunt, occultant, quaeque esse ex usu iudicaverunt, multitudini produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

THE GERMANS.—CH. 21-24.

Their Gods.

XXI.—Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam, reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Qui diutissime impuberes permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali vires nervosque confirmari putant. In fluminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvis renonum tegimentis utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda.

Hardy lives.

Land tenure.

XXII.—Agriculturae non student, maiorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios, sed magis-

tratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui tum una coierunt, quantum et quo loco visum est agri, attribuunt atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Eius rei multas afferunt causas : ne assidua consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultura commutent ; ne latos fines parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant ; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent ; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur ; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

Habits in war.

XXIII.—Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere neque quemquam prope audere consistere ; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae ac desidiae minuendae causa fieri praedĭcant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit se ducem fore, qui sequi velint, profiteantur, consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine collaudantur ; qui ex his secuti non sunt, desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque his rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fas non putant ; qui quacumque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque communicatur.

Brigandage no disgrace.

The Germans contrasted with the Gauls in bravery.

XXIV.—Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam

appellant, Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet iustitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. Nunc quod in eadem inopia, egestate, patientia Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur, Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus largitur, paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

THE HERCYNIAN FOREST.

Its extent.

XXV.—Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet; non enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauracorum finibus rectaque fluminis Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum dierum iter sexaginta processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit; multaque in eā genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint: ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

Its denizens; the reindeer.

XXVI.—Est bos cervi figura, cuius a media fronte inter aures unum cornu exsistit excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus; ab eius summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

The elk.

XXVII.—Sunt item, quae appellantur alces. Harum est consimilis capris figura et varietas pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crura sine nodis articulisque habent, neque quietis causa procumbunt neque, si quo afflictae casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut accīdunt

arbores, tantum ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsae concĭdunt.

Bos primigenius.

XXVIII.—Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, specie et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas, neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parcunt. Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt; hoc se labore durant adulescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent, et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines et mansuefieri ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose conquisita ab labris argento circumcludunt atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

CAESAR AGAIN IN GAUL. HE PUNISHES THE REBELS. CH. 29-44.

Caesar's return from Germany.

XXIX.—Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit, Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agri culturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longitudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit atque in extremo ponte turrim tabulatorum quattuor constituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Caium Volcatium Tullum adulescentem praefecit. Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet, Lucium Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere posset; monet, ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua eius adventūs procul significatio fiat; sese confestim subsequi dicit.

Pursuit of Ambiorix: a hair-breadth escape.

XXX.—Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit. Celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit: eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparatum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab omnibus videretur, quam fama ac nuntius afferretur, sic magnae fuit fortunae, omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, redis equisque comprehensis ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc quoque factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silva, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui vitandi aestus causa plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates, comites familiaresque eius angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

A 'sauve qui peut'; suicide of Catuvolcus.

XXXI.—Ambiorix copias suas iudicione non conduxerit quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est. Sed certe dimissis per agros nuntiis sibi quemque consulere iussit. Quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceano fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt; multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate iam confectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui eius consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, cuius magna in Gallia Germaniaque copia est, se exanimavit.

Segni and Condrusi submit. Quintus Cicero is left in camp at Aduatuca.

XXXII.—Segni Condrusique, ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones Treverosque legatos ad Caesarem miserunt oratum, ne se in hostiu numero duceret neve omnium Germanorum, qui esse citra Rhenum, unam esse causam iudicaret; nihil se de bello cog

tasse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar explorata re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit : si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praesidio impedimentis legionem quartam decimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Quintum Tullium Ciceronem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.

CAESAR GOES ON A SEVEN DAYS' EXCURSION TO THE SCHELDT.

Labienus, Trebonius, and Caesar continue the campaign.

XXXIII.—Partito exercitu Titum Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quae Menapios attingunt, proficisci iubet, Caium Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae ad Aduatucos adiacet, depopulandam mittit, ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partes ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiebat. Discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat, quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, deberi frumentum sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si rei publicae commodo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur, ut rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium rationibus aliud initium belli capere possent.

Difficulties and dangers.

XXXIV.—Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet, sed in omnis partis dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique aut vallis abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat non in summa exercitūs tuenda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis ; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. Nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius

evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites ; si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. Ut in eius modi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur.

Promises of booty. Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar : omnes evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur, simul ut magna multitudine circumfusa pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

CICERO BESIEGED BY THE SUGAMBRI IN CAESAR'S ABSENCE. CH. 35-41.

Raid of the Sugambri. XXXV.—Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic, quantum in bello fortuna possit et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. Transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque triginta milibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum ; primos Eburonum fines adeunt ; multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris numero, cuius sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praeda longius procedunt. Non hos palus in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt ; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis, *Quid vos*, inquit, *hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis : huc omnes suas fortunas*

exercitus Romanorum contulit; praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat. Oblata spe Germani, quam nacti erant praedam, in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usi eodem duce, cuius haec indicio cognoverant.

Cicero relaxes his precautions.

XXXVI.—Cicero, qui omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesaris cum summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die, diffidens, de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius progressum audiebat neque ulla de reditu eius fama afferebatur, simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egredi non liceret, nullum eius modi casum exspectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant ex legionibus aegri relicti; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum convaluerant, circiter trecenti, sub vexillo una mittuntur; magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis iumentorum, quae in castris subsederant, facta potestate sequitur.

Is surprised by the Sugambri.

XXXVII.—Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites interveniunt protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur, nec prius sunt visi obiectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris adpropinquarent, usque eo, ut, qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tuentur; reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident. Alius castra iam capta pronuntiat, alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse contendit; plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt Cottaeque et Titurii calamita-

tem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

The camp is saved.

XXXVIII.—Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cuius mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem iam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic diffisus suae atque omnium saluti inermis ex tabernaculo prodit; videt imminere hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones eius cohortis, quae in statione erat; paulisper una proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus; aegre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant.

Return of the foraging parties. The Sugambri fall upon them.

XXXIX.—Interim confecta frumentatione milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equites; quanto res sit in periculo, cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt; quid ab his praecipiatur, exspectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt; redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant; postea despecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

They fight their way into camp.

XL.—Calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt. Hinc celeriter deiecti se in signa manipulosque coniciunt; eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto, ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et, si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt; alii, ut in iugo consistant atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati

duce Caio Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam prodesse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt, sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines huius legionis traducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem amitterent fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute summotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

CAESAR RE-APPEARS ON THE SCENE.

The Sugambri retire.

XLI.—Germani desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum Caius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret, adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnino animos timor praeoccupaverat, ut paene alienata mente deletis omnibus copiis equitatum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

Return of Caesar to Aduatuca.

XLII.—Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignorans unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, questus (ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse), multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu, potuisse iudicavit, multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

Ambiorix baffles a final pursuit.

XLIII.—Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus magno coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agebatur; frumenta non solum a tanta multitudine iumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant, ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his deducto exercitu rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fuga circumspicerent captivi nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illata atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur, atque ille latebris aut saltibus se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret non maiore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.

Execution of Acco for treason. Caesar crosses the Alps to Italy.

XLIV.—Tali modo vastatis regionibus exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit, concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto de coniuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit et de Accone, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronuntiata more maiorum supplicium sumpsit. Nonnulli iudicium veriti profugerunt. Quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Treverorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agendici in hibernis collocavit frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

NOTES.

NOTES.

BOOK V.

N.B.—In the grammatical references, F. means First Latin Book; P., Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former, the numbers refer to *pages*; of the latter, to the *sections* of Part III., except where otherwise indicated.

CHAPTER I.

Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio consulibus: abl. abs.: F. 102, 3. Note: P. 85 (o). The *et* is often omitted between the names of consuls in this phrase. The year was A.U.C. 700; B.C. 54. The Romans marked their year by the names of the consuls in office; the Athenians by the name of the chief archon, hence called ἀρχων ἐπώνυμος; the Spartans by the first of the Ephors; the Argives by the priestesses of Juno.

ab hibernis: among the Belgae: B. IV., c. 38.

in Italiam=in Galliam Cisalpinam. Caesar as proconsul could not leave Gaul without the permission of the Senate. Italy Proper did not include *Liguria*, *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Illyricum*. Caesar generally spent his winters at *Luca*, a town on the borders of Italy Proper. "Here he could hold easy communication with his partisans at home. Lucca during his residence was more like a regal court than the headquarters of a Roman Proconsul. At one time 200 senators were counted among his visitors; 120 lictors indicated the presence of the numerous magistrates who attended his *levées*. Both Pompey and Crassus came here to hold a conference with him." Liddell's Hist. of Rome, p. 663.

consuerat=consueverat: note that *consuevi*, *memini*, *odi*, *coepi*, *novi* are perfects with a present meaning, the pluperfect having the meaning of an imperfect: hence, "was accustomed."

legatis: Caesar put a *legatus* over each legion.

quam plurimas: generally explained by *tam plurimas quam illi possent plurimas facere.* For *possent* see F. 206, 4; P. 106.

modum formamque: the former applies to "the shape" generally, the latter to "the form" particularly.

subductiones: "hauling up" on land, or "beaching"; cp. B. IV., c. 29: *in aridum subduxerat.* The plural is used, for more than one vessel is referred to. The word *deducere* is applied "to take down" the vessels to the sea.

humiliores sc. *naves:* the vessels were more flat than usual, with less elevation above the water, and with less depth of hold.

in nostro mari: the Mediterranean. So Plato (Phaedrus, 113, A.) calls the Mediterranean *ἡ παρ' ἡμῖν θάλασσα.* The classical meaning of *mediterraneus* is "inland" i.e., "far from the sea."

id eo magis, scil. *facit:* "he does this the more for the following reason."

minus magnos: the waves in the channel were shorter than in the ocean, not for the reason that Caesar gives, but because of the narrowness of the channel, the varied character of the coast, and the meeting of opposing currents.

ad onera—transportandam: with *onera* supply *transportanda* implied in *transportandam.*

maribus: said to be the only example of the ablative plural of *mare.* The plur. here refers to different parts of the Mare Internum or "Mediterranean."

actuarias predicate: scil. *naves.* These were vessels propelled by oars and sails.

fieri: what is the usual construction after imperat? F. 181, 3; P. II., 27.

usui: dative of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c).

ad armandas naves: "for rigging out the vessels" cp. *ὁπλίζειν* in Greek: Hom. Od. 17, 288: *νῆες ὁπλιζόμεναι.* He may refer to the fact that Spain supplied broom plant for cables, and metal for anchors.

conventibus: the proconsul held assizes or courts of justice in the principal cities of the province. In public or important causes he generally acted as judge, but in minor matters he delegated this power to his *quaestor* or to the *legati.* For convenience the provinces were divided into circuits (*conventus*).

Provinciae: Caesar's province.

Galliae citerioris: trace on the map *Gallia citerior* and *Gallia ulterior.*—*imperat:* what two meanings has *impero* and what two constructions? Translate, *militibus imperat: milites provinciae imperat.*

qui doceant=ut ei doceant: F. 184, 1; P. II., 25.

paratos—satisfacere: "that they were ready to make amends by all reasonable means for their wrong doing." The infinitive after *paratus* for the gerund or gerundive with *ad* is irregular. Zumpt explains the infinitive in such cases as the present by supposing that *paratus esse* equivalent to a single verb as *volo* which takes the infinitive.

eos i.e. obsides.

ad certam diem: when predetermination of future time is used we often find *ad* with accusative. Translate: *ad posterum diem senatum convocat: postero die senatum convocat.* It is rare that *dies* is feminine in such a case.

nisi—fecerint: the time of the verb is considered with reference to the act implied in *persecuturum.*

arbitros dat: "he appoints assessors." These *arbitri* based their decisions on equity. —*litem aestimare:* "assess the costs." —*poenam:* to be paid by the Pirustae over and above restitution.

qui=ut ei: see above *qui doceant.*

CHAPTER II.

revertitur: generally *reverti* is to return on one's journey: *redire* after the journey has been finished.

inde=ex Gallia citeriore. Long estimates that Caesar must have travelled over 2,000 miles. In the beginning of the year he left his army in Belgium, passed through Transalpine Gaul, held court in Cisalpine Gaul, went to Illyricum and settled disputes there, returned to Belgium in May or June.

cum: explain fully the force of *cum* with indic. and subj.: F. 203; P. 99 (f), v.

in—inopia: since the verb *sum* has no present participle, the prepositional ablative absolute is often used for it: cp. B. IV., c. 33., *in declivi ac praecipiti loco*: B. I., 33., *in tanto imperio:* B. II., 22., *in tanta iniquitate.* Translate here: "although they were in the greatest scarcity of all materials."

cujus: here *quod* would be more correct. Though the relative is often attracted into the case of its antecedent in Greek, it is not so common in Latin: yet we have in Hor., Sat. I. 6, 15, *judice quo nosti*: Ter. Heaut. I., 1, 36, *hac quidem causa qua dixi tibi.* Others explain the construction=*cujus generis naves.*

instructas: "fully rigged"; others read *constructas.*

neque—possent: literally: "and that they were not far from being able to be launched within a few days," *i.e.* "and that they were almost ready for launching within a few days." Note the redundant negative contained in *quin:* F. 185, 2, and 188, 6; P. II., 156-158.

paucis diebus: time *within which* is expressed by the abl. or by *intra* or *inter* with acc.: F. 82, 2; P. 85 (b).

collaudatis: bring out the force of *con* in translation.

quid velit: dependent questions are put in the subjunctive: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

portum Itium: probably *Boulogne (Gesoriacum)* is meant. At the head of the harbour of Boulogne there is a small French village by the name of *Isques.* Others say *Ambleteuse;* others still say *Wissant.*

quo ex portu: often the antecedent is expressed in the relative clause.

milium triginta: a Roman *passus* was a double step from the *toe* of the left to the *toe* of the left, *i.e.*, two steps, and measured 4 ft. 10½, so that a Roman mile would be 1,000 *passus* or 1618 yards.

huic rei: "for carrying out this object."

expeditis: "unencumbered with baggage," opposed to *impeditus*.

CHAPTER III.

haec civitas: i.e. of the Treveri.

plurimum—valet: "is the most powerful." Strictly *plurimum* is a neut. cognate acc. used adverbially.

supra: B. II., 24; III., 11.

Indutiomarus was opposed to the Romans. Caesar induced the leading men of the state to side with *Cingetorix*, the son-in-law, but rival of *Indutiomarus*. The latter took up arms against the Romans, but was slain by Labienus: B. V., 7.

alter: Cingetorix. Distinguish *alter* and *alius*.

cognitum est—venit: since the action expressed by *cognitum est* would be over before that expressed by *venit*, it would be natural to expect the pluperfect, *cognitum erat*. The Latin idiom, however, with *ut primum*, *quum primum*, *simul ac*, *simul atque*, all meaning, "as soon as," requires the *perfect historical*, not the *pluperfect* as might be expected from the succession of the actions indicated by these conjunctions.

gererentur: subjunctive of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

cogere, join this with *instituit*, "set about collecting."

iisque: the *-que* joins *cogere* and *parare*.

Arduennam: the word is from the Keltic *ar-denn*, "the deep," or from *ard*, "hard," and *venna*, "a pasture": now the forest of *Ardennes*, a vast forest in the N. W. of France and Belgium. The forest of *Arden* at Stratford is part of the same wood.

ingenti magnitudine: abl. of description: F. 131, 9; P. 85 (c).

nonnulli: distinguish in meaning *nonnulli* "some": *nulli non*, "every"; so, also *non nemo*, *nemo non*; *non nunquam*, *nunquam non*: *non nusquam*, *nusquam non*.

privatim: "individually."

civitati consulere: distinguish in meaning *consulere aliquem*, *consulere alicui*, *consulere in aliquem*.

veritus ne: F. 185, 3; P. II., 154.

sese: oblique narration is often introduced with *dixit* or some similar word omitted. Give rules for *oblique* narration: F. 205-209; P. 106. Change this into *direct* narration.

quo facilius: why not *ut facilius?* F. 183, 5; P. II., 26.

laberetur: literally "might fall off" from their allegiance, i.e., "might revolt."

in sua potestate: "at his mercy."

CHAPTER IV.

dicerentur: subjunctive of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

evocaverat scil. *Caesar.*

in officio: "in allegiance."

nihilo tamen secius: "none the less however." The comparative *secius* is rare because the positive *secus* has a comparative meaning. *secus* is from *sequor* and primarily means "after," then "less," so that *nihilo secius* means "less by nothing," *i.e.* nevertheless.

quod—valere: "because he was of opinion that this was done by him (Caesar), not merely according to the deserts of this one (*Cingetorix*), but also he thought it was of great advantage that the influence of that one should be very great among his own countrymen." Note that *quum—tum* =*et—et.—merito*: F. 71, 3.—*magni*: F. 150, 2; 166, 3; P. 81 (g).

perspexisset: virtual *oblique* narrative, hence subjunctive in dependent clause: F. 206, 4; P. 106. It may be explained as causal subj., *cuum*= *cum eius*: F. 198, 4; P. 99, (g) iii.

graviter tulit: "greatly annoyed."

qui=quippe qui: "whereas he had already been": F. 198, 4, Note: P. 99, (g) iii.

inimico animo: abl. of description: F. 131, 9; P. 85 (c).

hoc dolori; "at this grievance." —*exarsit* from *exardesco.*

CHAPTER V.

Meldis: the *Meldi* or *Meldae* were a people bordering on *Gallia Belgica.* Their territory lay at the junction of the *Sequana* (*Seine*), and the *Arar* (*Marne*).

revertisse: in the present and derived tenses *revertor* is the form: in the perfect and derived tenses the active form alone is used in the ante-Augustan writers. Distinguish in meaning *revertor*, to return on one's way, and *redeo*, to return after attaining one's object.

obsidum loco: when joined with the genitive, *loco* has a semi-prepositional force, "instead of," "as." So we have *in numero* : cp. *criminis loco*, "as a charge," *praemii loco*, "as a reward." It seems a substitute for the dative of purpose, which, however, is restricted to semi-abstract nouns.

quod—verebatur: when does *quod* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

quum—abesset: when does *quum* take the indicative and when subjunctive? F. 203; 188, 3; 196, 7; P. 99 (f), (g) and (i).

CHAPTER VI.

Dumnorix had conspired against the Romans in 58 B.C., and was pardoned by the entreaties of his brother Divitiacus (B. I., 20). Fearing that he might a second time stir up strife, Caesar desired to take him to Britain. His name is said to be derived from *domun-rig*, "king of the world."

antea: B. I., 3, 18.

in primis: "particularly."

quod—cognoverat: give the syntax of *quod:* F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

eum, scil. *esse.*

animi—auctoritatis: genitive of description: F. 130, 7, 8; P. 81 (e).

accedebat huc: "there was the further consideration that," literally, "to this was added that." The subject of *accedebat* is the clause *quod dixerat* and *sibi deferri* is in apposition to *quod* governed by *dixerat.*

graviter ferebant: as the Aedui annually elected a magistrate called *Vergobretus*, so called from the Keltic *Feor-go-breith*, "a man for judging," or *Guerg-breath*, "strong in judgment," they naturally were annoyed that this right of election had been taken out of their hands: B. I., 16. Caesar (B. VII., 33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no person could be elected, if a living member of the family held the post.

neque: "and yet—not."

recusandi—causa: "to protest or urge any plea against it."

quod timeret: gives not Caesar's reasons but those of Dumnorix: "because, he said, he feared." F. 198, 2; P. 99, (g), I.

religionibus: "religious scruples." The root—LIG (cp. ligare), points to the *binding* or *constraining* force of the unseen world.

id: the request to be left behind.

sevocare: "to hold secret meetings": from *se, vocare* to call apart to some spot.

coepit: what verbs are perfect-present? F. 145; P. 72 (a), (b). Explain the construction in *principes sollicitari coepti sunt; principes sollicitare coepit.*

territare: either a historical infinitive or supply *coepit.* Bring out the force of the *frequentative.* F. 303 (b); P. 75, iii.

fieri, scil., *dixit.* Note the *litotes* in *non sine causa.*

nobilitate: abl. of separation. F. 158, 2; P. 85 (h).

in—Galliae: "in the presence of the Gauls": cp. *in conspectu imperatoris:* B. II., 25.

interficere—vereretur: verbs of fearing take the infinitive in the sense "to be afraid," "not to have the courage" to do anything.—*interficere,* to kill in any manner, and from any motive: *necare,* implies cruelty or injustice.

fidem—interponere: "he pledged his own word to the rest," *i.e.*, to those not in the power of Caesar.

iusiurandum and *iuramentum*, a civil oath: *sacramentum*, a military oath by which the soldier binds himself to serve the State.

CHAPTER VII.

quod—tribuerat: B. I., 33. Explain the indicative with *quod:* F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

posset: scil. *Caesar eum coercere et deterrere.*

longius: "too far": F. 58, 5.

amentiam: "a person is said to be *amens* when he acts without reason like an idiot: he is said to be *demens* when he acts like a madman." —Döderlein.

prospiciendum: scil, *statuebat.*

ne—posset: scil. *amentia:* "to prevent his folly harming him or the state to any degree": —*ne*: F. 185, 3; P. II., 29. —*quid:* acc. of extent or degree.

itaque commoratus: "therefore *seeing* he had to stay": or some take it "*during* his stay."

Corus: the N. W. wind: also written *Caurus:* unfavourable to any one setting out from Boulogne.

partem: acc. of extent. F. 69, 9; P. 83 (c).

temporis=anni

dabat operam: "he was careful."

milites=pedites: as often in Caesar seeing that the *foot* formed the main strength of the Romans: see Introduction, *Army*.

conscendere in naves: we also find in Caesar *conscendere naves.*

impeditis animis: "when their attention was distracted": cp. Cic. Leg., 1, 3, 8, *impedito animo.*

insciente Caesare : "without Caesar's knowledge:" abl. absolute.

domum : explain construction : F. 85, 1; P. II., 93, (a).

intermissa—postpositis : "giving up his departure and every thing else."

retrahi imperat : the more usual construction would be *ut retrahatur* : F. 181, 3; P. II., 27, 28.

si faciat : "if he should offer resistance."

pro sano : "like a sane man."

praesentis, scil. *Caesaris*.

neglexisset : what would this be in direct narrative?

manu : "in a hand to hand fight": cp. Livy II., 46; *pugna iam ad manus venerat*.

civitatis : predicate genitive : F. 124; P. 81 (a).

CHAPTER VIII.

continente : words in—*ans*,—*ens*, when used as substantive or as actual participle, especially in the construction of the abl. abs. have *e*—in the abl. sing. We have with *continens*, however, *continenti* and *continente*.

pro tempore et pro re : "according as time and circumstances would permit."

pari numero quem = eodem numero quem : *i.e.* 2,000 : ch. 5.

solis occasu : another rendering is *ad solis occasum*. The date of the first expedition is fixed at the 18th or 20th of July.

Africo : called by the Greeks Λίψ, as blowing from Libya. The S.W. wind is still called by the Italians *Africo* or *Gherbino*.

intermisso : "having calmed down."

longius : Caesar probably passed the South Foreland and on the return of the tide he made his way to the shore.

remis contendit—caperet : "he strove to reach by rowing." As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy contends that Caesar started from the *estuary of the Somme*, and landed at the beach of *Pevensey*, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommsen favors the idea that the infantry embarked at *Ambleteuse* (which he identifies with *portus Itius*), and the cavalry at *Wissant*, east of Cape *Griz-Nez* (Hist. of Rome, IV., 7). Strabo also gives *portus Itius* as the place of embarkation on th· first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from Gesoriacum (*Boulogne*), and the cavalry at *Ambleteuse*.

admodum : properly, "according to measure" *i.e.* "in as great a measure as can be." In combination with numerals it denotes *approximation* and occurs frequently in Livy and Curtius. In Cicero we find it only

in the phrase *nihil admodum*, "in reality, nothing at all." Translate: "was highly praiseworthy."

non—labore; "since they made no relaxation in their exertions in rowing."

accessum—navibus: "all the ships reached Britain:" for the dative, See F. 164, 2, note; P. 82 (d), ii.

cum: "though": F. 196, 7; P. 99 (i). iii.

annotinis: scil. *navibus*: some say "added to the ships used in the former year": others, "added to the provision ships."

quas—fecerat: "which each one had chartered for his own service." Some explain *sui commodi* as governed by *causā* understood. It is not usual to have the omission of *causa* except with the genitive of the gerund. It is then explained as an imitation of the Greek idiom when ἕνεκα or ὑπέρ is omitted: cp. IV., 17: *si naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae*. The omission of *causa* with a substantive is perhaps nowhere else found in a prose writer.

amplius octingentis: the nominative *octingentae* would be more regular: P. III., 85 (f), and II., 123, c., 2.

ac—abdiderant: distinguish in meaning *in loca superiora* and *in locis superioribus, se abdere*.

CHAPTER IX.

exposito exercitu: the full expression is *exercitum ex navibus in terram exponere*.

castris governed by *idoneo*: what adjectives govern a dative? F. 60, 2; P. 82 (e), v.

consedissent: subjunctive of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

cohortibus decem: not a legion, but two cohorts from each of the five legions.

qui—essent: "to guard the vessels": for the two datives: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

de tertia vigilia: "in the course of the third watch": the expression implies that the third watch had been set. The Romans divided the night into *four* watches: *prima vigilia* from 6 to 9 p.m.: *secunda vigilia* from 9–12 p.m.: *tertia vigilia* from 12–3 a.m., and *quarta vigilia* from 3–6 a.m.

veritus navibus: "fearing for the ships." The dative is not common with *vereor*, though common enough with *metuo* and *timeo*.

molli atque aperto: "smooth and clear of rocks."

praesidio: dat. of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c). *navibus* governed by *prae*—in *praefecit*. F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

equitatu—essedis: abl. of instrument.

7

conspicatus est: "caught a glimpse of": the word *conspicor* is common in Caesar and Plautus: not common in Terence: never found in Lucretius, Vergil, or Cicero.

ad flumen: the *Stour* near Wye, the north bank of which is much higher (*locus superior*) than the south and would thus form a natural defence.

se in silvas abdiderunt: distinguish in meaning *se in silvas abdiderunt*: "they hid themselves by fleeing into the woods!" and *se in silvis abdiderunt*: "they hid themselves when in the woods."

opere: explained afterwards by *crebris arboribus succisis.* Such breastworks were often made in the American Civil War by felling trees.

ipsi—propugnabant: "they in scattered bands throw their javelins out of the woods." Others translate: "they came out of the woods in small bodies to fight"; but compare B. VII., 86: *ex turribus propugnantes.*

testudine facta: "forming a *testudo.*" This movement was done by the soldiers of the inner files locking their shields above their heads, while the outer files protected the sides. The resemblance of the locked shields to a tortorse shell (*testudo*) gave it the name.

longius: "too far."

prosequi: "to follow up the pursuit," "to continue in the pursuit." In the next chapter *persequor* is "to make a pursuit," "to pursue."

munitioni castrorum: "for fortifying the camp": by digging a trench and throwing up a mound. As this was indispensable, *castra munire* has often the meaning of *castra locare, castra ponere.*

CHAPTER X.

postridie eius diei: literally "on the morrow of that day."—*postridie =posteri die* seems to be a *locative form* for *postero die*, an ablative in ordinary Latin. The genitive *eius diei* is pleonastic and may have arisen from the analogy of the Greek in which ὕστερος takes a genitive: cp. B. I., 47. —*pridie eius diei:* Tacit. Ann. XV. 54: Tacit. Hist. I., 26, *postero iduum*=ὑστέρα εἰδῶν.

milites=pedites: as we find elsewhere in Latin.

in expeditionem: "as a flying column."

aliquantum itineris: partitive genitive: "some distance on their journey."

extremi: "the rear" of the detachment sent out by Caesar were still seen by those remaining in the camp.

qui nunciarent=ut ei nunciarent: F. 184, 1; P. II., 25.

afflictas: "shattered."

in litore eiectas esse: "were stranded on the shore." Some read *in litus*. The difference between the ablative and the accusative is that the latter would simply imply that they were driven on shore while the former would express that they were still remaining there.

subsisterent: "held," "kept them in position."

concursu: "collision."

incommodum: a mild way of stating the actual loss that occurred in consequence of the disaster.

CHAPTER XI.

legiones: so *milites = pedites*.

desistere itinere: abl. of separation: F. 158, 2; P. 85 (h).

revertitur: see note V., 5.

coram perspicit: "he sees with his own eyes."

sic ut: *sic* is here superfluous. The regular construction would be to omit *sic ut* and use the accusative with the infinitive in the clause *reliquae—viderentur*, since it really depends on *cognoverat*.

negotio: "trouble."

fabros: these were not necessarily a part of the legion, though they frequently accompanied it. They were a sort of Engineer Corps who looked after the mechanical work to be done, and were under the direction of the *praefectus fabrum*. Here, in the absence of the regular *fabri*, Caesar calls for volunteers out of the legion.

iubet—scribit: note the force of these presents.

nullae operae ac laboris: "though it was a wearisome and laborious undertaking: F. 124; P. 81 (a).

subduci: *subducere naves* opposed to *deducere naves*.

praesidio navibus: for the two datives: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

eodem: to the fortified place lately taken from the enemy.

summa imperii: "the whole of the command."

huic—intercesserant: "constant wars had sprung up between this one and the other states": for the dative *huic*: F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

permoti: in presence of the Romans the Britons forgot their broils and appointed Cassivellaunus a leader.

CHAPTER XII.

quos—dicunt: "of whom the inhabitants state there is a tradition that they were born in the island itself." The original inhabitants of Britain belonged to the great Keltic family that occupied in Caesar's time all the western part of Europe. The belief that they were *autochthones* seems to

have been common among the Romans : Tacit. Agr. II.: *ceterum Britanniam qui mortales initio coluerint, indigenae an advecti. ut inter barbaros, parum compertum.* So also were the Carians according to Herodotus (B. I. 171) ; the Sicani (Thucy. VI. 2) ; the Athenians (Eurip. Ion, 29).

maritima pars scil. *incolitur ab iis.* So also Tacit. Agr. II.: *proximi Gallis et similes sunt;*

nominibus : that is, there were tribes in Britain and on the continent with the same name as the Atrebates, Belgae and Parisii.

hominum : "of the population."

fere Gallicis consimilia : with *Gallicis* scil. *aedificiis :* "like in the main these in Gaul.

taleis examinatis : "iron bars of ascertained weight." A good deal of discussion has arisen on this passage, because the Greek paraphrast renders the word *taleis* by δακτυλίοις, "finger rings." By comparing the present passages with B. VII. 33, we find *taleae* used in the sense of "bar" or "beam."—*examinatis* : cp. *examen (=exagimen),* "the beam of a balance :" so *ala = axilla* : *mala = maxilla.*

nummo : Herodotus calls the current coin νόμισμα (B. I. 94 ; III. 56). According to Aristotle (Ethics v. 8) the word is derived from νόμος because the value is fixed by *law* (νόμος). It is probable that the Romans introduced the word *nummus* from the Sicilian word νοῦμος, a name given to a small coin worth about five cents of our money. The earliest mint established at Rome was in 344 B.C.

plumbum album : "tin." Caesar here reverses facts. The *tin* mines of Britain are found near the coast chiefly in Cornwall, Devon and Wales ; while *iron* is abundant in Stafford, Shropshire, Derby, parts of York and Durham. The Scilly Islands were called *Cassiterides* or *Tin Islands* from the Greek κασσίτερος, "tin." It is strange that Mr. Crutwell, of Oxford (History of Roman Literature, p. 192), should make the mistake in supposing that *plumbum album* meant *lead.* "The existence of lead and iron were known to him (Caesar) ; he does not allude to tin, but its occurrence could hardly have been unknown to him."

ejus : refers to iron. According to official statistics, the gross annual produce of iron is 3,600,000 tons, while *tin* amounts to about 10,500 tons. The fact that Caesar gained his information from the people on the coast, where iron is scarce, may have led to this mistake.

aere importato : though we find *copper* in Cornwall, Devon, Stafford and Anglesey, the mines were not much worked till the last century.

materia : "timber."

fagum : fagus in Vergil and in Pliny is the *beech* while φηγός in Theophrastus is the *oak.* Both words are from φαγεῖν, "to eat," indicating the use of the nuts as food for primitive man. Crutwell (Hist. of Roman

Literature p. 192, note 3) says: "I am told by Professor Rolleston that Caesar is here mistaken. The pine, by which he presumably meant the Scotch fir, certainly existed in the first century B.C., and as to the *beech*, Burnham beeches were then fine young trees."

leporem—putant: it is not known how this belief originated. The hare was forbidden under the Mosaic law (Levit. xi., 6); possibly the absence of corn in Britain may have made the others unpalatable.

non fas=nefas: "impious."

loca frigoribus: on account of its insular position and the influence of the gulf stream. Tacitus says (Agr. 12) *caelum crebris imbribus ac nebulis foedum*: *asperitas frigorum abest.*

CHAPTER XIII.

natura: "by nature," *i.e.* "in shape." Caesar may have gained his knowledge of the shape of Britain from the natives or from the then extant works of the Greek writers since the island was not circumnavigated by the Romans till A.D. 84, fully a century after his time: cp. Tacit. Agr. 10: *hanc oram novissimi maris tunc primum Romana classi circumventa insulam esse Brittanniam affirmant.* Strabo (IV. 5, 1) mentions also the fact that Britain is triangular and says that its longest side is parallel to Keltica and is 4,300 *stadia* in length (about 500 miles). Keltica was a name applied to the country from the mouth of the Rhine to the Pyrenees. Pomponius Mela (III., 6) compares Britain in shape to Siclly and says that one side faces Gaul, and another side, Germany.

Cantium: now Kent, which is said to mean "corner."

quo—appelluntur: "for which almost all the ships from Gaul make;" with *appellere navem*, cp. the Gk. *κέλλειν νῆα.*

inferior corresponds to *alter* in *alter angulus.*

hoc—alterum, scil. *latus.*

quingenta: the measurement from North Foreland to Land's End is 344 British or 356 Roman miles. Strabo's statement was evidently taken from this statement of Caesar.

alterum vergit scil. *latus*: cp. Tacit. Ag. 10: *Britannia in orientem Germaniae, iu occidentem Hispaniae obtenditur*: "Britain lies opposite to Germany on the East, to spain on the West." The erroneous views held by the Romans with regard to the position of Britain arose from their innate dread of long ocean voyages.

qua ex parte: Tacitus (Agr. 34) says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. The word Hibernia is said to be derived from the Keltic *Eriu* or *Iveriu*, meaning "Western." (Max Müller Science of Language. Vol. I. p. 284.)

dimidio minor: "half the size," literally, "less by a half. The area of Great Britain is said to be 77,370 square miles; that of Ireland about 30,370 sq. miles.

pari spatio atque=eodem spatio atque: "the same distance as:" abl. characteristic: F. 131, 9; P. 85 (c): so *pari numero*: B. V. Chap. VIII. The distance from Carnsore Point in Southern Ireland and St. David's Head in Wales is 53 miles: between Fairhead in Northern Ireland and Mull of Cantire in Scotland the distance is 13 miles: the distance from Calais to Dover is 21 miles.

Mona: some have supposed the *Isle of Man* to be here referred to, since the position of that Island is midway between Britain and Ireland. As, however, there is no doubt about *Mona* in Tacitus (Agr. 14; Ann. XIV. 29) referring to Anglesey, Caesar may have been misinformed of its position. Besides the Isle of Man was properly called in Latin *Monopia*. According to Taylor (Words and Places), the word *Mona* is from the Keltic *monn* "a district." So we have *Maine*, *Mayenne* in France, *Mantua* in Italy, *La Mancha* in Spain, *Mansfield*, *Manchester*, the *Menai* Straits in England. Others say from Welsh *mon* "alone," or *menedh* "an island."

complures—insulae: Caesar, no doubt, refers to the Hebrides, Orkney or Shetland Islands, but wrongly places them in the channel between Britain and Ireland.

nonnulli: probably Greek geographers whose works have perished.

bruma=brevima=brevissima: scil. *dies*: the winter solstice. This, of course, is untrue.

certis—mensuris: "by accurate measures made by the water clock." The *clepsydra* (*κλεφύδρα*) is meant. The water clock was said to have been invented about 460 B.C. Its use was common among the Greeks. It consisted ordinarily of two globes of glass cemented together, the lower one receiving the water and having the divisions of the hours marked on it.

ut—fert opinio: "according to their belief": cp. Cic. pro Fonteio 13, *ut opinio mea fert*: "as I believe."

septingentorum milium: the west coast of Britain is 590 British or 610 Roman miles. For descriptive genitive: F. 130, 7, 8: P. 81 (e).

tertium, scil., *latus*.

hoc: the west coast of Britain is 550 British or 570 Roman miles. This is short of the actual.

CHAPTER XIV.

humanissimi: cp. Shakespeare Henry VI., 1, 4, 7.

> Kent, in the commentaries of Caesar writ,
> Is termed the civil'st place in all the isle.

interiores plerique: "the majority of the people of the inland district": *plerique* means "most people" or "the majority": *plurimi*, both "most people" or "a great many."

vitro: "woad," still cultivated in France and till *indigo* took its place much used in producing blue dyes.

hoc : ablative of means.

horridiore aspectu : ablative of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c). So also *capillo promisso.*

deni duodenique : "companies of ten and in other cases twelve." We would say "ten or twelve." This statement is generally regarded as untrue.

CHAPTER XV.

ita tamen ut = ita tamen conflixerunt ut.

omnibus partibus = in omnibus partibus : "in every quarter."

cupidius : "too eagerly."

intermisso spatio : "after an interval of time had elapsed."

se—eiecerunt : "they sallied forth." The impetuous character of the Kelts was as strongly marked in Caesar's days as in later times.

in statione : "on sentry."

iis primis : the first cohorts of the legion regularly contained the finest troops.

inter se : "apart."

per medios—perruperunt scil. *hostes* : "the enemy made a dash between them." These cohorts had probably not been on the first expedition.

CHAPTER XVI.

cum—dimicaretur : "when the battle was going on in sight of all and in front of the camp." For *quum* : F. 203 ; P. 99, (f), v.—*sub oculis = in conspectu.*

intellectum est : "it was evident to us." Supply *nobis* dat. or *a nobis* : F. 164, 2, note : P. 82 (d), ii.

nostros = milites legionarios. —sub oculis = in conspectu.

ab signis discedere : "to desert the standards" would be a violation of the *sacramentum* or military oath.

minus aptos : "less effective" (than others would be).

equites—dimicare scil. *intellectum est.*

consulto—cederent : "often purposely yielded."

quum—removissent : "when once they had drawn away."

dispari praelio : the heavy body armour of the Romans would hamper their movements, while the Briton armed (Tacit. Agr. 36) with a long sword and small buckler, would skilfully elude the blows of his antagonist and by his superior length of weapon would be more effective.

et cedentibus et sequentibus scil. *Britannis*: "to the Britons while retreating and pursuing." The meaning is that when the Britons and Romans used cavalry the danger was equalized, but when the Britons used chariots they were at an advantage.

accedebat huc ut: "to this was added the fact that."

stationes dispositas: "outposts stationed here and there."

deinceps: "in succession": so also *manceps*, *terticeps*, *anceps*, old nominatives used adverbially.

CHAPTER XVII.

rari: "infrequently."

lenius = minus acriter: "with less spirit."

proelio lacessere: "to draw out to battle:" distinguish this from *proelium lacessere*: "to skirmish."

tres legiones: this is an unusually large number to send on a foraging expedition. Perhaps the lesson they had learned on a previous occasion (B. IV. 32) had made them more guarded.

Caio Trebonio: Caius Trebonius was one of Caesar's *legati*, and distinguished himself by his personal bravery when the winter quarters of Cicero were attacked by the German horse: B. VI. 40.

advolaverunt, scil., *hostes*.

sic uti—absisterent: i.e., *sic advolaverunt=tam celeriter advolaverunt*: "with such impetuosity they rushed forward that they came close up to the standards of the legions." The meaning is that the enemy dashed against those that had ventured outside the ranks to forage but did not dare to commence a regular engagement with the three legions.—*signis legionibusque =signis legionum* by *hendiadys*.

neque = et non.

subsidio scil. *legionum*: "to the support of the legions:" for the case see F. 105, 9, note: P. 85 (k), iii. Translate, "as long as the cavalry trusting to the support (of the legions), now that they saw the legions in their rear, drove the enemy before them."

neque—dederunt scil., *nostri milites*: "our soldiers gave them no opportunity either to unite their forces, or to form in line, or to leap down from their war chariots." —*sui colligendi*: F. 171; P. II., 141. *Aut* after *neque* is more emphatic than a second *neque* would be. —*unquam* and *usquam* are properly used in sentences that are negative or *virtually* negative.

summis copiis: "with all their forces united." Some translate it by "with a numerous force." The Greek paraphrast renders it by πολλῇ δυνάμει.

CHAPTER XVIII.

fines Cassivellauni : across the Thames in what is now Middlesex and Buckinghamshire.

uno omnino loco=in uno omnino loco. It is difficult to say which spot is meant here. *Sunbury*, *Conway*, *Westminster*, *Wallingford* and *Kingston* are given by different authorities.

hoc i.e. *in hoc loco.*

alteram=adversam : "on the opposite."

praefixis : "driven into the sloping bank," while *defixae* refers to those driven into the bed of the stream.

perfugis : a person is said to be *perfuga* with regard to those to whom he flees : *transfuga*, with regard to those whom he abandons.

praemisso : sent up and down the south bank of the Thames to guard the advance of the legion, and to dislodge those who may be waiting to oppose them.

ea celeritate—ierunt : "but our soldiers pushed forward at so rapid a pace, and with so violent an onset, though their heads alone were out of the water, that, etc." : *capite solo* : abl. of measure : F. 58, 6 ; P. 85 (g).

CHAPTER XIX.

ut supra : B. v., 17.

contentionis : "of continuing (the war)."

amplioribus : "the most of."

millibus—quattuor essedariorum : if each chariot contained six men besides the driver, as it seems they did, there would be about six hundred chariots.

servabat=observabat : "kept watching."

locis=in locis.

iis regionibus : ablative of separation : "from that district."

viis semitisque : *via* is the regular road : *semita* is a by-path.

et confligebat : "and attended with these he was wont to engage with great danger to our men."

hoc metu : "from fear of this," as *hoc dolore* (B. v., chap. 4).

relinquebatur ut : "the only alternative left to Caesar was" or "all that remained for Caesar was."

CHAPTER XX.

labore atque itinere : "by toilsome marching" : *hendiadys.*

Trinobantes occupied Essex and Suffolk. The best way of translating this involved sentence is to break it up into at least four sentences.

"Meanwhile the Trinobantes, about the most powerful state of that district, send ambassadors to Caesar and promise to surrender themselves to him, and to obey his orders. From that (state) the youthful Mandubratius, who had attached himself to Caesar, had come to him in continental Gaul. Imanuentius, the father of this (Mandubratius), had held sovereign power in that state and had been slain by Cassivelaunus, (while) he himself (Mandubratius) had escaped death by flight. They (the Trinobantes) ask (Caesar) to defend Mandubratius from all wrong-doing on the part of Cassivellaunus and to send to the state (a man) to rule it and to exercise sovereign power." See remarks on the differences between Latin and English idiom. F. p. 230; P. page 210. —*ex qua* scil. *civitate.* —*pollicentur sese—facturos*: F. 110, 1; P. II., 13. —*qui praesit=talem ut praesit*: F. 184, 1; P. II., 34, 55.

his—imperat: what two meanings and what two constructions has *impero?*

ad numerum: "to the full amount."

CHAPTER XXI.

Trinobantibus defensis, the kindness shown by Caesar to the Trinobantes gained over the other tribes to the side of Rome. The *Cenimagni* inhabited *Bedford* and *Cambridge;* the *Segontiaci*, probably *Berkshire;* the *Ancalites*, *Oxford* and *Buckingham; Bibroci*, *Berkshire;* the *Cassi*, *Hertfordshire.* This defection was ruinous to the British cause; even the Cassi, the state over which Cassivellaunus ruled, joined in it.

oppidum: generally supposed to be *Verulamium* or St. Albans.

satis magnus: "quite a large."

autem: "now."

natura atque opere: "by its natural position and especially by fortification."

oppugnare, "to storm": *expugnare*, "to take by storm."

paulisper: used of past and future time: *parumper*, generally of future time.

multi scil. *Britanni*: "many of the Britons."

CHAPTER XXII.

in—locis: about St. Alban's.

ad mare: "on the sea coast."

quibus regionibus: "over which district": for dative F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

castra navalia: B. v., chap. 2.

constituisset—superesset—intelligeret: explain these subjunctives.

id posse : "and that this time might easily be wasted," if further delay was made. The experience of the first expedition had taught Caesar the danger of waiting too long in Britain.

quid penderet : *tributum* was a tax paid by each individual through the tribe in proportion to a man's property : *vectigal* taxes levied in any other way. Caesar left no garrison in Britain and the tax was, consequently, never paid. The conquest of Britain was really begun under the Emperor Claudius, A.D. 43, but not completed till the reign of Domitian about 81 A.D.

CHAPTER XXIII.

refectas scil. *esse* : "had been repaired."

his deductis, scil., *navibus*.

duabus—commeatibus : "in two trips :" ablative of manner.

sic accidit uti : "it so happened that." F. 182, 4 ; P. 99 (b), ii.

desideraretur : "was lost."

inanes : these were of two kinds, both those used in the first trip returning for another load and those made on the continent and sent across by Labienus.

ne—excluderetur : "that he might not be prevented from sailing by the time of the year."

aequinoctium suberat : Caesar sailed from Britain shortly after the middle of September, so that he had been in the island two months or over.

necessario—collocovit : "he necessarily stowed away his soldiers in narrower compass than usual."

solvisset scil. *naves*.

CHAPTER XXIV.

subductis : "drawn up on shore" for the winter by means of rollers.

concilio : assemblies of the whole nation were often held as in B. I. 30.

Samarobriva : from Samara, *Somme*, briva, *bridge ;* so that the word means *Sommebridge* : now *Amiens*.

Angustius provenerat : "had turned out rather short." The plural *siccitates* refers to the "seasons of dry weather :" cp. *frigora* : B. V. Chap. 12.

aliter ac : after *alius*, *similis*, *aeque*, *perinde* and comparatives, *ac*=than. —*alteram*, note that *secundus* is rarely used for *second*.

proxime : "very recently" said of time, though it commonly is said of place.

trans Padum : speaking from the standpoint of Rome.

inopiae—mederi posse: "could he remedy the scarcity of corn." Distinguish *medeor* "to heal," referring to the skill of the physician and *sanor*, to the disease.

millibus—centum: this probably means that the camps were situated within a circle, having a radius of 100 miles, so that no two camps would be more than 200 miles from each other.

CHAPTER XXV.

summo loco natus: "born of the highest rank": abl. of origin.

huic indirect object after *restituerat.*

tertium—regnantem: "in the third year of his reign" literally "this one reigning now the third year." Note the present participle.

quod—pertinebat: "because (the interests of a) great many were involved" literally "because the matter concerned a good many": supply *ea res* with *pertinebat.*

hos—mittere scil. *iubet*: "he orders (L. Plancus) to take into custody and to send to him these by whose instigation he had now learned that Tasgetius had been murdered." Note the indicative in *cognoverat* scil *Caesar.*

CHAPTER XXVI.

diebus—quibus: literally, "within about fifteen days in which" *i. e.* "about fifteen days after."

ventum est scil. *Caesari = Caesar venit*: F. 164, 2, note; P. 82 (d), ii.

quum praesto fuissent: "though they had presented themselves."

Indutiomari—impulsi: this chief had been offended (B. v., chap. 4) by the degree of power given by Caesar to his rival Mandubratius, and had become a formidable rival.

oppugnatum scil. *castra*: for supine: F. 174; 2 and 3; P. 105.

aliqui: less common than *aliquis*: F. 132; P. 95, i.

CHAPTER XXVII.

ex Hispania = Hispaniensis.

sese: put this speech into direct narration. The order is, *sese confiteri, pro beneficiis Caesaris in se,* (*se*) *debere plurimum ei* &c.

ei = sibi i.e. *Ambiorigi.*

obsidum numero: cp. *loco obsidum.*

de oppugnatione: "in regard to the storming of the camp."

suaque—imperia : "and that the conditions of his authority were such."

porro : "now" passing on to a fresh statement.

alteri legioni subsidio : for the two datives : F. 134, 1 ; P. 82 (c) and (d).

quibus satisfecerit : "and since he had done enough for them in respect of his duty to his country." Cicero (Orat. Part. 22) defines *pietas* : *iustitia erga parentes pietas nominatur.*

habere—Caesaris : "he had regard to what was due from him in return for the favours of Caesar."

saluti consulat: distinguish *aliquem consulere, alicui consulere, in aliquem consulere.*

conductam scil. *mercede* : "hired for pay."

hanc scil. *manum.*

ipsorum esse consilium : "that it was for themselves to consider:" *ipsorum* refers to Titurius and Cotta.

eductos—deducere : "to take the soldiers out of their winter quarters and conduct them either to Cicero or to Labienus."

quod quum faciat : "in doing this he was both acting in the interest of his state in relieving it from the (Roman) winter quarters." In this chapter carefully account for the tenses in *oblique narration.*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

re : "news."

etsi—existimabant : explain the mood in *existimabant.* F. 196 ; P. 99 (i).

consilium : "a council of war" consisting of the *legati*, *tribuni* and *primorum ordinum centuriones.*

nihil—existimabant : "thought that nothing should be done rashly, nor should they leave winter quarters without the order of Caesar."

quantasvis—docebant : "they told them that forces of the Germans, however great, could be kept back, in case that the winter quarters were fortified." —*munitis hibernis* : abl. abs. = *si hiberna munita essent.*

rem—testimonio : "what had happened was a proof of this:" referring to the clause introduced by *quod.* Note the dative of purpose which is confined to abstract or semi-abstract nouns.

re—premi : "that there was trouble about supplies."

quid esse levius aut turpius : rhetorical question in oblique narrative. What would it be in direct narrative?

CHAPTER XXIX.

contra ea=contra: "on the other hand."

sero: "when too late."—*facturos* scil. *esse se.*

clamitabat: "kept shouting out:" explain the force of the frequentative. F. 303, (e); P. 75.

aliquid calamitatis: "some misfortune:" partitive genitive: F. 69, 10; P. 81 (b).

non—spectare scil. *se*: "he had in view not the advice of the enemy but the real state of affairs."

magno dolori: see note on *testimonio*, last chapter.

Ariovisti mortem: Caesar nowhere tells us when or where Ariovistus died.

tot—extincta: "after receiving so many reverses, it (Gaul) had been reduced under the sway of the Roman people after its former glory in military greatness had been extinguished."

quis—persuaderet: "who would believe this?" literally, "who would persuade this to himself?" Note the rhetorical question.

sine certa re: "without sure information," or "unless on sure grounds.',

suam—tutam: "his own advice was safe for either emergency."

si—perventuros: "if no greater difficulty came in their way, without any danger they would reach the next legion:" *i.e.*, if the Gauls did not attack them.

unam—salutem: "their only hope of safety was in speedy action."

praesens: "immediate."

longinqua obsidione: ablative absolute: "if the siege were long."

CHAPTER XXX.

in utramque partem: "on both sides" i.e. *pro* and *con.*

primis ordinibus=centurionibus primorum ordinum: the *six* centurions of the first cohort of the legion had the name of *primipilani* or *primipilares.* These were members of the council of war.

acriter resisteretur: "a fierce opposition was maintained."

vincite: "have your own way", literally "prevail", "conquer."

is=talis: "I am not the one to be" &c.: F. 188, 8, 5; P. II., 34, 35.

hi reposcent: "these men will understand the matter, and if any disaster occur, will demand satisfaction from you, Cotta."—*hi* refers to the soldiers to whom he pointed and who were near enough to hear what was said.

qui intereant: "inasmuch as they, if you would not hinder them, on the day after tomorrow united with (those in the) next winter-quarters, would

certainly bear along with their comrades only their share of impending danger and certainly would not die like outcast and banished men far away from the other (Romans)."

qui=quippe qui.—si—liceat : literally "if it is allowed through you".—*perendino* : probably derived from *πέρην*, *dies*, "the day beyond tomorrow."

CHAPTER XXXI.

consurgitur impersonal passive : "the members rise from the council" : so also *pronunciatur* below, "orders are issued."

comprehendunt utrumque : "they grasp the hands of both" : Cotta and Sabinus.

rem : "their safety."

dat—manus : "gives way," "yields" : offers his hands to be bound or signifies by a gesture that he makes no further resistance.

consumitur—cogeretur : "the remaining part of the night is spent without sleep, since each soldier examined his own effects (to see) what he might be able to carry with him, what part of his winter's stores he would be compelled to leave behind" : *circumspiceret* : F. 188, 3 ; P. 99 (g), ii. *posset—cogeretur* : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

omnia—augeatur : "every reason is suggested (to prove) why there was no staying without danger, and why the danger would be increased by the lassitude and watches of the soldiers." The meaning is that the soldiers try to convince themselves by plausible arguments that their conduct for leaving was justifiable.

ut—persuasum=ut ei proficiscerentur quibus esset persuasum : literally, "as those would start who were convinced," or "like men convinced." Note the impersonal use of *persuasum esset*. Translate into Latin : *I am convinced.*

agmine—impedimentis : ablative absolute.

CHAPTER XXXII.

vigiliis : "by their not retiring to rest."

bipartito : "at two points."

a milibus—duobus : "about two miles off" : for *milia passuum circiter duo ab eo loco.*

opportuno—loco : either the abl. abs. or governed by *in* understood. It is said that such a place is the valley of Lavarges, about two miles above Tongres.

se—demisisset : "had descended" : so *erigere agmen*, "to ascend" a hill.

convallis : a valley closely surrounded by hills, at the bottom of which the Romans were caught.

novissimos=agmen novissimum.

iniquissimo : "most unfavourable."

CHAPTER XXXIII.

tum demum ; "then and not till then" : so often in Caesar.

qui—providisset : "inasmuch as he had no foresight" : *qui=quippe qui* or *quum is* : F. 198, 4, note ; P. 99 (g), iii.

trepidare—disponere : historical infinitives.

haec scil. *fecit.*

ut—viderentur : the full construction is *ita fecit ut omnia viderentur deficere eum* : "and he acted in such a way that all his plans seemed to fail him."

quod—coguntur : "a thing which generally is wont to happen to those who are compelled to form their plans on the spur of the moment." —*quod=id quod* : *consuevit* : note the perfect present.

at : "however," "on the other hand" :

qui cogitasset=quippe qui cogitavisset.

auctor : "adviser."

omnia obire : "to attend to all his duties." Supply *officia.*

iusserunt pronuntiare scil. *tribunos et centuriones* : "they ordered the tribunes and centurions to pass the word." Another reading is *pronuntiari*, which is probably correct : "ordered word to be passed."

in orbem : "into a hollow square."

reprehendendum non est : "is not to be criticised."

vulgo : "at all points," "everywhere" : cp. the Greek paraphrast *πάντοθεν.*

CHAPTER XXXIV.

consilium : "presence of mind."

tota acie : ablative of place : "along the whole line."

illorum—praedam : "the booty (of the Romans) belonged to them (the Gauls)" : possessive genitive.

proinde—existimarent : "therefore let them consider" : *existimarent* in oblique, would be *existimate* in direct narration.

duce : Sabinus.

neu=neve=et ne.

levitate armorum : the Gauls were generally armed with a long sword and light buckler and could easily elude the heavily armed legionaries of the Romans.

posse depends on *dixit* understood implied in *iubet.* The command is again taken up in *insequantur.*

CHAPTER XXXV.

iis=barbaris.

quum: the indicative is often used with *quum* in the sense of "whenever."

eam partem: the troops that left the circle to charge on the enemy were exposed to attack on all sides. "Meanwhile that portion of the square was unavoidably exposed, and javelins poured in on its unprotected flanks."

quum—coeperant: see note on *quum* above.

conferti: "being so closely packed together": from *confercio.*

conflictati: "though overwhelmed."

horam octavam: about 2 p.m.

primum pilum duxerat: "who had been chief centurion": *i.e.* the first centurion of the first cohort. He was probably now serving as a veteran. These after the expiration of their term of service were called *emeriti* or *evocati.*

in adversum os: "full in the face": cp. *adversa nocte*, "with night in their teeth."

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Cn Pompeium: probably a Gaul who had obtained the Roman *civitas* and adopted the *nomen* and *praenomen* of the Roman noble through whom he obtained it.

rogatum: supine.

sperare—pertineat: "(he said that) he hoped that the request might be obtained, so far as the safety of the soldiers was concerned." Note the present infinitive in *posse* depending on *sperare.* What is the usual construction and why is not the usual construction observed here?

ipsi, i.e., Titurius.

communicat—colloquantur: after *communicat* supply "and suggests." Trans.: "sends word to Cotta and suggests that, if he thinks fit, they should withdraw from the fight and together hold a conference with Ambiorix."

sperare—posse: "(he said) that he hoped that he would be able to obtai the request for both his own safety and that of the soldiers."

CHAPTER XXXVII.

quos—tribunos militum=eos tribunos militum quos.

propius Ambiorigem: the adverbs *propius*, *proxime*, like the preposition *prope* from which they are formed, often govern the accusative.

iussus abicere—ut faciant imperat.: note the difference between the construction of *jubere* and *imperare.*

condicionibus: "terms;" derived from *con* and *dico*, I say; hence "agreement."

longior consulto: "on purpose somewhat tedious."

ululatum: "war cry": cp. Livy, V., 37: *nata in vanos tumultus gens (Gallorum) truci cantu clamoribusque variis horrendo cuncta compleverant cantu.*

pauci—elapsi: Sabinus and Cotta had a legion and a half, or about 6000 men, as the legion would not have the full complement of soldiers. At least 5000 soldiers must have perished in the battle.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

re demonstrata: "when news of the battle was laid before them."

sui liberandi: gerundive sing., agreeing with *sui* plural: F. 170, 3; P. 104. On the other hand *ulciscendi* is a gerund.: F. 172; P. 103.

nihil—interfici: "that it was not a difficult task for the legion wintering with Cicero to be surprised and slaughtered."—*negotii*: partitive genitive.

cum Cicerone: "under the command of Cicero."

hiemet: why subjunctive? F. 206, 4; P. 106.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Centrones—Geidumnos: small tribes in what is now West Flanders, dependants of the Nervii.

eorum = Nerviorum.

huic i.e. Cicero, whose camp was next besieged.

quod = id quod.

lignationis—causa: "to procure wood and materials for fortification."

adepti = si adepti essent: "if they got this victory."

CHAPTER XL.

mittuntur: note the emphatic position of this word.

perlulissent scil. *eas litteras nuntii*: note the force of *per.*

materia: "timber."

admodum: literally, "up to the amount of": it may mean "fully" or "at least"

excitantur: "are erected."

perficiuntur: note that prepositional compounds of *facio* make the passive regularly in *—ficior*.

multo: really an abl. of difference used adverbially: cp. Greek πολλῷ with comparatives.

deinceps: "one after another," "continuously." The termination is the same as in *particeps*, *princeps*.

opus sunt: in this case *opus* is an indeclinable noun with the force of an adjective: "necessary": *opus* may be used with every case but the dat. of the thing needed. Here *quaecumque* is nominative: so we may also have *quorumcumque opus est*, *quaecumque* (acc.) *opus est*, or *quibuscumque* (abl). *opus est*: the person needing is, however, put in the dative.

pila muralia: these siege pikes were longer and heavier than the ordinary pikes.

contabulantur: "are built up in stories."

pinnae—attexuntur: "notched battlements and breastworks (made scil. *factae*) of woven osiers are attached (to the towers)."

tenuissima valetudine: "of very feeble health": the ablative denotes an *accidental* quality: the genitive, if used, would express a *habitual* quality.

ut—cogeretur: "so that by the rushing of the soldiers (around him) of their own accord, and their pleadings, he was forced to spare himself."

CHAPTER XLI.

qui—habebant: "who had opportunity for an audience and reasons for being well disposed towards Caesar."

potestate: "permission."

oppugnari: "are now being attacked."

Ambiorigem—causa: "for the purpose of gaining credit they point out boastfully that Ambiorix was at hand."

quidquam—praesidii: "any aid": partitive genitive.

eos: Cicero and his troops: *his*, Caesar and the other commanders.

hanc—consuetudinem: this custom of wintering in Gaul.

licere—discedere: "they might go away from their winter quarters without any hindrance, so far as they (the Nervii) were concerned."

velint: for what two reasons is the subjunctive used?

unum modo: "only one thing."

utantur—mittant: the third pers. pl. subjunctive in oblique narration represents second pers. pl. imperative in direct discourse. Thus *se adiutore utantur* in oblique narration = *me adiutore utimini*: "employ me as a mediator."

sperare impetraturos : it is unusual for the pronoun to be omitted with the future inf. after verbs of *hoping*. Most MSS. give *sperare se*. —*se* refers to Cicero.

pro eius iustitia : "in accordance with his sense of justice," "such was his sense of justice."

CHAPTER XLII.

hac spe : the hope of deceiving Cicero as Titurius Sabinus had been deceived.

pedum quindecim : "a rampart nine feet high and a ditch fifteen feet wide." The genitive of description is usual when no adjective is used. Had adjs. been used, what would have been the usual construction?

nulla—copia : "there being no supply of iron implements adapted for this purpose": the ablative absolute: F. 102, 3, Note; P. 85 (o). —*quae esset*=*talis ut esset*.

minus horis tribus: *horis* is the ablative of time within which a thing is done: *minus*, *plus*, *amplius* being used adverbially without any influence on the construction. We may thus say, *fossa plus quam pedes tres lata* or *fossa plus pedes tres lata* or *fossa plus pedibus tribus lata*.

milium passuum quindecim : *milium quindecim* is descriptive depending on *munitionem* and has *passuum* partitive genitive depending on it.

ad altitudinem valli : "up to the height," *i.e.* equalling the height of the Roman rampart.

falces : these were *falces murales* or "siege hooks," long poles with iron hooks for pulling down battlements and walls.

CHAPTER XLIII.

ferventes—glandes scil. *factas* : "red hot balls (made) of soft clay:" it is difficult to understand how these could be thrown by leathern slings. The *glans* was usually a leaden bullet, acorn-shaped at both ends, whence its name.

fervefacta iacula : perhaps tow and pitch was wrapped round them and then set on fire.

casas : instead of tents, the winter quarters were provided with huts, more permanent structures *(casae)*.

distulerunt, i.e., *(hae casae) distulerunt (ignem)*.

parta : "gained:" from *pario* : scil. *est*.

ea—fuit : "such the firmness of their resolution," "their firm resolve."

demigrandi causa : "for the purpose of retiring from the fight."

ne respiceret quidem : note the emphatic word put between *ne—quidem*. Of course the verb is governed by *ut*.

eventum: "result."

ut—constipaverant: "as they crowded themselves together beneath the very rampart, and those farthest off gave no chance to retreat to the fore most."

quodam loco, scil., *in*. The reference is to a movable tower *(turris mobilis)*.

quorum nemo=sed nemo eorum.

deturbati scil. *sunt*.

CHAPTER XLIV.

qui=et tales ut: "and so brave that they were nearly being advanced to the front rank." They were on the point of being *primipilares*.

perpetuas controversias: "long continued disputes." The plural refers to the various occasions.

quinam=uter: "which of the two:" for subjunctive of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

omnibus annis for the more common *omnes annos*: "year in and year out."

summis simultatibus: "with the keenest rivalry about military position."

quam—pugnaretur: "when the fight was going on the keenest at the fortification."

quem—spectas: "what opportunity for proving your valour do you look for?"

in eam irrumpit: "against this (part) he directs his attack."

omnium opinionem: "the opinion that all would have of him."

relicto: between Pulio and the enemy.

quo—hunc: for the more common construction: *quem percussum et exanimatum* with *hunc* omitted as *quo* and *hunc* both refer to the wounded Gaul.

illum i.e. Pulio.

Pulioni: dative of disadvantage: F. 105, 9; P. 82 (c), i.

verutum: a light javelin shaped like a spit (*veru*).

hic casus: "this accident": the scabbard (*vagina*) was turned from its place and so placed out of Pulio's reach.

conanti: dative of disadvantage: "as he was trying to draw his sword."

succurrit: note the position of the verbs through this passage and the use of presents. Account for these two facts.

inimicus: distinguish this from *hostis*.

veruto: the dart that has pierced his shield and struck in the sword belt.

in locum—dejectus: "stumbling into a hollow place he fell."

rursus: "in his turn."

in contentione et certamine: "in their rivalry and in the fight."

utrumque servavit: "changed the positions of both."

inimicus: "though a foe."

CHAPTER XLV.

quanto correlative to *tanto*.

in dies implying daily increase or decrease and so used with comparatives: *quotidie*, daily repetition.

magna—vulneribus: "since a great number of the soldiers was exhausted with wounds."

res—pervenerat: "the garrison had been reduced to a few defenders."

intus: "in the camp." He was a knight, and probably as such brought his servants and followers with him: for as Caesar says, "there are only two classes among the Gauls, the Knights and the Druids, all the rest aer serfs and slaves": B. VI., chap. 13.

suamque—praestiterat: "and had sworn an oath of fidelity to him."

illigatas: the *in-* (*il-*) makes it probable that the dart was hollow and the letter was contained in it. —*ille* i.e. the slave.

ab eo cognoscitur = Caesar ab eo cognoscit.

CHAPTER XLVI.

millia: accusative of extent of space.

alterum noncium: "a second envoy."

reipublicae commodo: "with advantage to the state": *commodo*: ablative of attendant circumstance. Note in oblique narrative this would be *si—poteris, veni.*

CHAPTER XLVII.

adventu: "approach" rather than "arrival" which the word sometimes means. Caesar was already on the march from Samarobriva *(Amiens)* when Crassus reached them, and left orders for him to take charge of the troops and stores in that place.

litteras publicas: probably books and papers containing armory accounts. We might translate "state papers."

non—moratus: "with tolerable haste."

occurit: scil., *Caesari.*

veritus ne—posset: explain the meaning of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of *fearing*. Translate *vereor ut veniat; vereor ne veniat.*

fugae similem: "which looked like a flight."

quos—sciret: the relative gives a reason and hence the subjunctive: "inasmuch as he knew that they were elated by the recent victory:" F. 198, 4; P. 99 (g), iii.

remittit: note that *re-*implies an answer to Caesar's message.

educturus esset: "(telling him in the letter) with what danger he would lead the legion from winter quarters." This is virtual oblique narrative. In direct narration it would be: *magno cum periculo—educam.*

rem gestam—perscribit: "he gives him a full account of the massacre (literally, the affair carried out) among the Eburones." Note the force of *per-*in *perscribit.* The reference is to the massacre of the fifteen cohorts of which Caesar could have heard no more than a rumour from Cicero's letter.

tria milia passuum: accusative of extent of space: F. 69; P. 83 (c).

CHAPTER XLVIII.

etsi—redierat: "though, disappointed in his expectation of (having) three legions, he had been reduced to two:" literally, "he had returned to two." —*opinio* not "opinion" which is *sententia* in Latin, but "expectation."

unum—auxilium: "the only measure that could meet a danger which threatened all." The dative is governed by *auxilium* since *auxilior* the verb governs a dative.

magnis itineribus: ablative of means or instrument. The regular day's march *(iter justum)* was from six to seven hours long The start was usually made at sunrise, but this would depend on circumstances, for in special emergencies the army started at midnight or at two or three in the morning. The distance in the ordinary days march covered was 15 or 20 miles. In forced marches *(itinera magna)* the troops marched 8 to 12 hours and often covered 50 Roman miles.

Graecis—litteris: in Greek characters, not necessarily in the Greek language. All educated Romans understood Greek and some of the Gauls were familiar with the Greek alphabet. It is said that Caesar sometimes "used a somewhat simple cipher, each letter being the fourth from its true place in the alphabet."

tragulam: a heavy javelin, larger than the *verutum* mentioned above: derived rom *traho.* It was hurled by means of the "thong" *(amentum*: from *agimentum*, from *ago*, "to drive," or from *apmentum* from *ap*, "to tie," as in *aptus).*

neque = et tamen non.

biduo: ablative of time within which: F. 82, 2; P. 85 (b).

perlectam, scil. *epistolam.* —*recitat*: this verb is often used in the sense "to read publicly." Translate: "he read the letter over and then recited it aloud in an assembly of soldiers": note the force of *per-*in *perlectam.*

CHAPTER XLIX.

per exploratores : distinguish this in meaning from *ab exploratoribus.*

omnibus copiis : ablative of attendant circumstances.

contendunt : "direct this march": *tendo* means, "to stretch" or "strain": the word is often used to express eagerness or haste.

hae, scil. *copiae.* Another reading is *haec*, agreeing with *milia.*

data facultate : "taking the opportunity," afforded him by the withdrawal of the Gauls.

Gallum—repetit : "asks for another Gaul": note the force of *re-* in *repetit.* Evidently the Gaul who had taken Cicero's first message had either not returned or was not disposed to make a second venture.

qui=ut is : F. 184, 1; P. II, 25. Express purpose in different ways in Latin.

faciat, i.e., *ut faciat.*

convertisse : supply *hostes* from the preceding lines : *convertisse* is transitive.

eosque—confirmat : "and he strengthens them in their resolution to fight."

trans vallem et rivum : to be construed with *conspicatur.* The river is probably the Harne, a tributary of the Scheldt.

erat—res : "it was a very dangerous thing": literally, "a thing of great danger": the genitive is that of quality.

aequo animo—existimabat : "he thought that he might slacken his speed without alarm."

hominum milium septem : "consisting of" or "containing scarcely seven thousand men": genitive of description.

tamen—contrahit : "yet he contracts it as much as he can by making the streets between the tents narrow": literally, "by the narrowness of the streets." For the ways of a Roman camp see Introduction.

ut—veniat : literally, "that he should come to be an object of supreme contempt to our enemy."—*hostibus* : date of remoter object.

CHAPTER L.

ad aquam : at the stream flowing through the valley.

Galli scil. *continent.*

Caesar—contenderet : the order is : *Caesar (se continuit in suo loco) ut, si .... posset, citra vallem .... contenderet* : "Caesar kept himself in his own position so that, if haply, under the feigned appearance of fear he might be able to allure the enemy to his position, he might engage in battle with

them on his side of the valley in front of the camp."—*suum locum*: "a position favorable to himself," *i.e.*, on his side of the stream, on the sloping ground leading up to his camp: cp. *locus alienus*, "a ground picked by another," hence an unfavorable spot.

portas obstrui: "the gates to be blocked up," explained in the next chapter, by piling up rows of turfs.

concursari—agi: impersonal passives. Translate: "and in carrying out those orders he bids them run to and fro as much as possible and act with the greatest degree of feigned alarm:" literally, "that there should be rushing about and acting."

CHAPTER LI.

invitati: "tempted."

etiam de vallo: to give rise still more strongly to an appearance of alarm on the part of the Romans.

pronuntiari: "a proclamation to be made."

ante—tertiam: about 9 a.m.

sine periculo licere, scil. *id facere*.

in speciem = ad speciem: "for show."

ea scil. *via*: "by that way," or adverbial. The meaning is through the gates.

portis—facta: the soldiers, as they rushed out, easily threw down the thin barriers of turf.

omnino nemo: "no one at all." In what two ways is *nemo* made emphatic here?

pugnandi causa: "to make a fight of it."

armis: ablative of separation.

CHAPTER LII.

neque—relinqui: "and that there was no longer any chance of inflicting the slightest loss upon them." —*detrimento*: ablative of attendant circumstance.

producta: "being paraded."

non—vulnere: "that not one soldier in ten had escaped unwounded," literally, "not each tenth man." The superlative with *quisque* is a favorite Latin construction. Translate: *all the best men were praised by Caesar.*

sint administratae: dependent question: F., 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

appellat: "addresses."

de casu Sabini et Cottae: he had previously received an account of the disaster from Labienus, chapter 44, B. V., who had learned the circumstances from survivors, chap. 35, B. V.

hoc—relinquatur: "he tells them that the loss must be borne with the greater resignation on this account because, by the kindness of the immortal gods and by their valour since the loss has been wiped out, neither is lasting joy left to the enemy nor is more prolonged grief left to them." —*hoc*, ablative of means: *quod* expounds what it is. —*relinquatur*: sub junctive of *oblique* narration.

CHAPTER LIII.

per Remos: either, "through the country of the Remi," or "by means of the Remi."

abesset: scil., *Labienus.*

ante mediam noctem: the ninth hour would be about 2.30 p.m., for it was now autumn. To midnight from 2.30 p.m., would be less than ten hours. Messages were transmitted (B. VII., chap. 3) in the following way: "when anything unusually important and striking takes place, men pass the news over fields and districts by shouting, different persons in turn receive the message, and pass it on to their neighbors."

Fabium: he guarded the stores at Amiens (*Samarobriva*) in Caesar's absence.

tribus—legionibus: Caesar had now the legion of Cicero with him in addition to the other two mentioned, B. V., chap. 48.

trinis hibernis: distinguish *trina hiberna (castra)*: "three winter camps," and *tria hiberna castra*: "three winter huts": F., 69, 8, c.

et—explorabant: "and even trying to find out what resolution the rest of the Gauls were taking and by whom a beginning of the war was bei g carried on." —*quid—consilii*: partitive genitive. —*reliqui* scil. *Galli.* —*caperent—fieret*: dependent questions, hence the subjunctive.

quin—acciperet: literally, "but that he received." Translate, "without his receiving some news of the plans and disturbance of the Gauls."

Armoricae: now Britanny and Normandy. The word is said to be derived from *ar* "upon," and *moir*, "sea," both Keltic words: so that the name means "the country on the sea."

sui: Roscius.

longius milia passuum octo: see note on *minus horis tribus*: chap. 42.

adeo ut—videretur: "made their retreat *even* to its having the appearance of a flight": *adeo*, literally, "to that degree."

CHAPTER LIV.

alias—alias: "at one time—at another." Others make these agree with *civitates* understood.

quum—denuntiaret: "since he gave them to understand": —*quum*, causal: F. 188 3; P. 99 (g) ii.

in officio: "to its allegiance."

obtinuerant: "had held," not "obtained," which would be *adepti erant*.

adventu in Galliam Caesaris: "on the arrival of Caesar in Gaul." Note *in Galliam*.

senatum: a body consisting of the chief men of the tribe to whom Caesar applies the name of the corresponding body at Rome.

dicto audientes: "obedient": *audiens* is here used in the sense of *obediens*, which is a compound of *audiens*. *Dicto audire* is not found, though *dicto audiens* is common.

tantum—valuit: the subject of *valuit* is the following infinitive clause: translate: "(The fact) that some were found who were leaders in making war had such an influence with the barbarians, and it brought such a revulsion of feelings in the minds of all that there was hardly any state which was not suspected by our men except the Aedui and Remi. These Caesar always held in especial honour, one for their old and unwavering loyalty towards the Roman people, the other for their recent kindnesses in the Gallic war." —*vetus*, "long standing," not necessarily "unbroken": *perpetuus*, "unbroken"

nobis: dative of agent after the perfect participle passive for *a nobis*.

idque—dolebant: "and this (the fact last stated) is perhaps not so much to be wondered at, both for several other reasons and especially (from the fact) that they who in martial valour were accustomed to be ranked before all nations, especially grieved that they had lost so much of that reputation as to endure the command of the Roman people."—The indirect question after *haud scio an* is generally affirmative.—*opinionis*: partitive genitive.—*cum—tum*: "both . . . and."

CHAPTER LV.

totius hiemis—mitterent: "let no time of the whole winter pass without sending envoys across the Rhine": see note on *quin—acciperet*: chap. 53.

sollicitarent: "tampering with": from *sollus* = *totus* and *cieo*, "stir up."

neque—potuit: "still no state of the Germans could be persuaded":—*persuaderi* impersonal infinitive. Note that *potuit*, when used impersonally, can be joined only with the *passive* infinitive. "it is not possible to do this" is not *hoc facere potest* but *hoc fieri potest*.

Ariovisti bello: in the first campaign 58 B.C., mentioned in B. I. C. 30-54.

Tencterorum transitu: B. IV., chap. 1-15, in which is related the account of the *Tencteri* and the *Usipetes* crossing the Rhine, B.C. 55, and being driven back with great slaughter by Caesar.

lapsus: "disappointed."

tota Gallia: abl. of place *where*: F. L. 85, 3; P. 85, (k).

CHAPTER LVI.

intellexit scil. *Indutiomarus*.

ultro: "unsolicited."

venire: "that they were coming": impersonal infinitive with an intransitive verb.

conscientia facinoris: the Senones on account of the expulsion of their king Cavarinus (chap. 54): the Carnutes on account of the assassination of Tasgetius (chap. 25).

armatum concilium: so also Livy, xxi, 20: *in his nova terribilesque species visa est, quod armati* (*ita mos gentis*) *erat in concilium venerunt.* So the early Franks are said to have laid their arms aside only when going to church.

hoc=*armatum concilium indicere.*

quo adv. =*ad quod concilium.* —*vēnit*: not *vĕnit.*

novissimus: "last": so also *agmen novissimum*, "the rear guard." *dies novissimus*: "the end of the world": cp. the German *der jüngste Tag.*

hostem publicat: "he declares him a public enemy and all his property forfeited to the State." *publicare* is to make private property become public property.

huc=*ad eas civitates*: on the way to the Senones he would have to pass through the territory of the Remi.

CHAPTER LVII.

loci natura et manu=*natura ac opere* (Chap. 9): "by the natural position and art."

nihil timebat: "had no feeling of anxiety:" *nihil*, cog. acc.

quam=*aliquam*: note that *quis*=*aliquis* after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto.*

alias—alias: adverbs, "now—now:" as above Chap. 54.

timoris opinionem: "an impression of fear;" following the same tactics as Caesar had so successfully used of late.

CHAPTER LVIII.

in dies "daily," used with words expressing increase or diminution and hence used with comparatives or words of comparative force: *quotidie* "daily," expressing repetition.

nocte una: "during a single night:" the night of the day appointed for them to assemble, mentioned above.

intromissis: "admitted."

tanta diligentia: "with such care."

ubi visum est, scil., *eis discedere*: "when they thought it best for them to depart."

sub vesperum: "just before the evening set in:" note that *sub* with words of time may mean, "just before" or "just after."

praecipit atque interdicit: here we have a positive and a negative order. To *praecipit* belongs the clause *unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum* and to *interdicit* the clause *neu quis quem prius vulneret*, etc. Translate: he commands them that when the enemy should be terrified and put to flight (which he foresaw would happen, as it did), to all aim at Indutiomarus alone: and he forbids anyone wounding a man before he sees that chieftain slain."—*petant* i.e. *ut petant*.—*quem*: see note on *quam*, Chap. 57.

mora nactum: "having gained time by the delay caused by pursuing the rest."

occiderint, scil., *eum*: indefinite and, therefore, subjunctive: "any who should have killed him."

comprobat: "justifies."—*hominis*: Labienus.

fluminis: the Mosa (*Meuse*).

habuit: "found."

BOOK VI.

CHAPTER I.

The events of this book belong to the year B.C. 53, when Cn. Domitius Calvinus and M. Valerius Messala were consuls.

multis de causis: these reasons may be "the death of Dumnorix, the comparative failure in Britain, the loss of the entire division of Cotta and Sabinus, the hostility stirred up among the Treveri by Indutiomarus, and, above all, the general longing for freedom throughout Gaul."

delectum habere: these levies were held generally by means of *conquisitores*, whose duty it was to search out those avoiding military service. Often, however, *legati*, as here, were employed.

proconsule: Pompey was consul 70 B.C., and a second time B.C. 55. In the latter year, on the expiry of his consulship, Pompey received the Government of the two Spains, which however he entrusted to his lieutenants, for he himself remained at the city watching events.

petit—iuberet: the construction is *petit (ut) iuberet (eos) ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci quos—rogavisset, quoniam—remaneret:* "he asked the proconsul to order those to muster at the standards and to set out to him whom he had summoned from Cisalpine Gaul to take the military oath of the consul since he himself remained near the city with military power for the sake of state reasons."—*quoniam—remaneret:* this gives, not Caesar's, but, Pompey's reasons, and hence the subjunctive. Pompey pretended that the cause of his detention at Rome was to superintend the supplies of corn for the capital *(rei publicae causa).—quos consulis sacramento rogavisset:* the subjunctive is due to attraction to the subjunctive in *remaneret.* Note *sacramento consulis rogare*, "to enlist under the consul:" literally, "to enroll by the military oath of the consul."—*sacramento:* ablative of means. So also *sacramento adigere.* The recruits were said *in consulis verba iurare.*

magni: genitive of *price.* F. 150, 2; P. 81 (g).

ad opinionem Galliae: "as regards the estimation formed by the Gauls." Note that *opinio* is hardly ever to be translated by "opinion," which is expressed by *sententia.*

ut—posset: "that if any loss was sustained in war, this might be not only repaired in a short time, but it might be compensated by the increase of forces." Note the partitive genitive in *detrimenti.—resarcire*, properly "to repair a garment by re-stitching it," hence "to repair" generally.

quod—tribuisset: "and when Pompey had granted this both in the interests of the republic and through the claims of private friendship."

Caesar and Pompey were still friends though Pompey's wife Julia, Caesar's only daughter, had died in the latter part of 54 B.C.

per suos, scil., *legatos*.

tribus: Caesar had lost fifteen cohorts, *i.e.*, a legion and a half, in the attack of the Gauls on the winter-camps (B. V., Chap. 26-37).

ante—hiemem: "before the end of winter."

possent: dependent question.

CHAPTER II.

docuimus: B. V., Chap. 58.

ulteriores: "those farther off."

inventis—cavent: "having found some states to listen to them, they strengthen their alliance by mutual oaths and they give hostages as security for the money."—*obsidibus*: abl. of means.—*cavent*: "give security," so *cautio* (from *caveo*), "bail:" cp. French, *caution*: English, *caution money*. *Cavere* also means "to obtain security from one."

Cisrhenanis Germanis: the reference is to the Condrusi, Eburones, Caeroesi and Paemoni, who dwell near the Rhine: B. II., Chap. 4.

maturius: "earlier than usual."

CHAPTER III.

nondum—confecta: "before the end of winter."

coactis: "having been mustered:" probably the three legions that had been placed in winter quarters about Samarobriva (B. V., Chap. 53) and that one under Fabius among the Morini (B. V. 24).

priusquam—possent: the subjunctive is due to the clause being virtually one of *oblique narrative* and also expressing *intention*.

ea praeda—concessa=eis loco praedae militibus concessis: "giving up these to the soldiers as booty."

hiberna: at Samarobriva (Amiens).

concilio: a general meeting (*concilium*) of the Gauls seems to have been a settled institution. Caesar seems after 58 B.C. to have summoned them periodically and to have considered attendance at these a test of loyalty.

primo vere: probably the early part of March.

instituerat=ut facere consuerat: "according to his practice."

venissent, scil., *ad concilium*.

initium is emphatic and the predicate of *esse*.

ut—concilium: "that it might appear that he esteemed this more

important than anything else;" literally, "to place everything after this." Note that *videretur* is personal here as always. "It seems that he will do this" is *videtur hoc esse facturus*: literally, "he seems to be about to do this."

Lutetiam Parisiorum: said to be the first mention of Paris in history: "Lutetia belonging to the Parisii." The name of the tribe was always added to the name of the town in this case, and the name of the tribe afterwards alone survived. According to Pritchard, the word *Lutetia* is an abridgment of the Keltic *Loutokia*, "the place of the loch," just as *Lugdunum* (now Lyons) is "the city of the loch," the rivers in both cases having formed a sort of small lake near the towns mentioned. *Lutetia* is said to have occupied only the island in the Seine *(Isle de France)*, which forms only a small part of the modern city. Clovis fixed his residence there in 502 A.D., and from this time the importance of the place dates.

hi, i.e., *Parisii.—consilio*, "plot:" different from *concilium*, "an assembly."

hac re—pronuntiata: "this adjournment having been announced from the tribunal." The *suggestus* (or *suggestum*) was an elevated platform made of stones, turf or wood, according to circumstances. From it speeches were delivered and judgment given by the presiding officer.

CHAPTER IV.

princeps eius consilii: "the leader in that scheme."

conantibus—nuntiatur: literally, "to them attempting to do so, before it could be accomplished, word is brought." For the subjunctive in *posset* see note on *priusquam possent* in Chap. 3.

deprecandi causa: "for the purpose of excusing their acts."

adeunt—civitas: "they make their application through the Aedui, under whose protection their state was in former days."—*quorum* depends on *in fide*. The Senones had been clients and allies of the Aedui.—*antiquitus*: "from ancient times." The termination *-tus* is adverbial: cp. Greek *-θεν*: *caelitus* = *οὐράνοθεν*.

libenter joined with *dat veniam*: "willingly grants pardon."

petentibus Aeduis: abl. abs.: "at the request of the Aedui:" The pardon was granted to the Senones at the instance of the Aedui, who with the Remi were Caesar's friends. He afterwards punished Acco. Chap. 44.

quod—arbitrabatur: "because he (Caesar) considered the summer was the season for the war that was on hand and not for an enquiry." Understand *tempus* with *instantis belli.—quaestio* is the technical term for any enquiry of a judicial nature whether conducted by regular forms or by a special commission.

obsidibus imperatis: what two meanings and constructions have *imperare*? Translate: *he ordered the legions: he levied ten legions from this state.*

Eodem Carnutes : to the same place to which the Senones send.

deprecatoribus : "as intercessors." The Remi were, as well as the Aedui, on friendly terms with Caesar.

ferunt : "obtain."

peragit : "brings to a close:" different from *concilium agere*, "to hold a meeting."

CHAPTER V.

totus—insistit : "applied his whole attention and will to the war against the Treveri and Ambiorix." Distinguish *mens*, the thinking faculty from *animus*, the emotional faculty.—*Treverorum* : objective genitive.

ne quis—exsistat : "that no disturbance in the state might be caused by the indignation against this man (Cavarinus) or through the enmity which he had brought on himself."—*civitatis* : taken with *motus*.—*huius* : objective genitive.

pro explorato habebat : "he was certain": so *pro certo habere*.

proelio—concertaturum : "would not measure his strength in battle."—*concerto* is only used here by Caesar.—*proelio* : abl. of means.

reliqua—circumspiciebat : "he kept watching his other plans attentively."—*eius* : Ambiorix.

perpetuis : "continuous." The *Menapii* extended from the lower Scheldt to the Meuse: the *Eburones* from the Meuse to the Rhine.

venisse—amicitiam : "that they had formed alliances with the Germans by means of the Treveri." *Germanis* : dative of remoter object. P. 82 (a).

illi : Ambiorix. F. 119, 5 (a) : P. 92 (c).

prius—quam—lacesseret : subjunctive of virtual oblique narration in dependent clause.

congredi=se conjungere, coire in societatem : "to join sides with:" not the usual meaning of *congredior*.

nulla coacta manu : "collected no regular force."

CHAPTER VI.

pontibus : bridges over the streams tributary to the Scheldt.

quibus coacti : "compelled by these stringent measures."

hostium numero : "as enemies:" so *custodis loco* below.

pacis petendae causa : give all the other possible constructions.

CHAPTER VII.

dum geruntur : explain the tense after *dum*.

quae hiemaverat : "which had spent the winter:" it was now summer. Labienus was still on the edge of the Ardennes Forest (B. v. 24).

bidui via: "the distance of two days."—*via:* abl. of distance.

quum cognoscunt: when does *quum* take the indicative?

impedimentis: dative depending on *praesidio.* Note that *impedimenta* is the baggage of the whole army, and *sarcina* that of the individual soldier.

flumen: either the Moselle, Sour or Ourthe.

consilio: "council of war:" from root SED "to sit," hence a meeting. *Concilium* is from a different root = *concalium:* root CAL, "to summon": cp. *calare, Kalendae, καλεῖν.*

dicantur: subjunctive of oblique narration.

primis ordinibus=primipilis: see note on B. V., Chap. 35.

quo: when is *quo* used for *ut?* F. 183, 5; P. II. 26.

fugae similem: fugae is genitive.

in tanta propinquitate: "since the camps were so near each other." The prepositional ablative absolute is used, as the verb *sum* has no participle."

CHAPTER VIII.

agmen novissimum: see note, B. V., Chap. 56.

Galli join with *dubitant.*

ne—dimitterent: "not to let the expected booty slip out of their hands."

longum esse: note the transition from the subjunctive to the infinitive: "that it was a tedious matter."

committere non dubitant: note that *dubitare* may mean (1) to hesitate; (2) doubt. In the sense of *to hesitate* as *here* and in the affirmative meaning *to doubt* it takes an infinitive: in the negative meaning *to doubt* it takes *quin* with the subjunctive.

eadem—itineris: "practising the same deception as regarded his march," *i.e.*, keeping up the appearance of a retreat.

signa—converti: "the standards to be faced against the enemy." Distinguish *signa conferre,* "to engage in battle:" *signa referre,* "to retreat:" *signa inferre,* "to advance:" *signa efferre,* "to go out of camp."

dirigi: "to be formed."

paucis—dimissis: literally, "a few squadrons being sent to the baggage for a guard:" *i.e.*, "a few squadrons being sent to guard the baggage." —*turmis:* the cavalry of the legion were usually 300 in number, divided into ten *turmae.*—*praesidio:* dative of purpose.

ad latera: "on the flanks."

infestis signis: with hostile standards."

ire: supply *eos* the suppressed antecedent of *quos.*

impetum modo: "even a single charge," or as some say, "even the first onset."

civitatem recepit: "recovered the allegiance of the whole tribe."

percepta—fuga: "as soon as they gathered news of the flight of the Treveri."

comitati eos: "attaching themselves permanently to them."

CHAPTER IX.

Ex Menapiis: Caesar now goes back to the close of Chapter VI.

altera—altera: "the one—the other." Distinguish in meaning *alter* and *alius.*

paulum supra: further up the stream, not far from the modern Andernach. The other bridge was built near Bonn, B.C. 55, and is fully described in B. IV. Chap. 17.

nota—efficitur: "when the plan of the bridge was understood and determined upon, the work is completed within a few days with great zeal on the part of the soldiers."—*ratione,* abl. abs.—*studio,* abl. of means.—*paucis diebus*: express this in other ways.

ne—oreretur: "to prevent any sudden rising taking place among them." When is *quis=aliquis?*

qui—doceant=ut ei doceant: F. 184, 1; P. II. 25.

neque—laesam: "nor had they broken their allegiance to him."

sibi parcat: "to spare them:" referring to the subject of *orant,* i.e., *Ubii.*

ne—pendant: "lest in his common hatred of the Germans the innocent should suffer for the guilty."—*Germanorum*: objective genitive. With *poenas pendere* compare *dare poenas.*

amplius obsidum: this example of a partitive genitive is not common. It would be more usual to have *plures obsides.* So also *dare* the present infinitive is unusual after *pollicentur.* The more common construction would be *se daturos esse.*

CHAPTER X.

denuntiare: "to announce."

ad iniquam—deduci: "might be induced to fight under adverse conditions."

penitus: "from the interior:" with the ending *-tus:* cp. *-θεν* in Greek: cp. *funditus,* "from the bottom:" *caelitus,* from heaven."

silvam: the Bacenis wood seems to have been a part of the great Hercynian forest which extended over a great part of Germany. Some identify it with the present Thuringerwald, Erzgebirge and Reisengebirge.

introrsus=*intro-versus*: "into the interior."

ab Suevis: "on the side of the Suevi."

ad—silvae: some say in Meiningen in Western Saxony.

CHAPTER XI.

locum: "place" in the narrative. *perventum est*=*pervenimus.*

alienum: "foreign" to the subject or "out of place."

in—partibusque: "in all cantons and sections of cantons."

quorum—redeat: "to whose will and decision the settlement of all matters of business and of all proposals is referred."

quorum: the antecedent is *qui.*

ejus rei causā: "with this object in view:" literally, "for the sake of this thing:" referring to the clause *ne—egeret.*

quisque: each patron or party leader.

haec—Galliae: "the same principle prevails in general throughont all Gaul." Note that *in summa* is "in general:" *Galliae* depends on *ratio.*

CHAPTER XII.

quum—venit: when does *quum* take the indicative?

hi: "the latter:" according to Caesar (B. I. Chap. 31) before the Sequani, the Arverni had held the leadership.

magnae—clientelae: "they had many States dependent on them." When does *quod* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), 1.

jacturis: "sacrifice:" *jactura* is properly anything *thrown overboard* to save a cargo. Hence anything sacrificed in expectation of future benefit.

tantum—antecesserant scil. *Sequani Aeduis*: "the Sequani had so far surpassed the Aedui in power." Distinguish *potentia*, the power of the strong, wealthy or unscrupulous; *auctoritas*, the moral power of a great and good man, or the force of example, *i.e.*, influence: *potestas*, the official power of a magistrate: *imperium*, the military power of a general.

publice: "as a state."

possiderent: "should occupy:" depending of course on *ut.*

Divitiacus: the Druid who had gone on this embassy B.C. 63. He became a friend of Cicero, and was on the side of Rome throughout the Gallic wars. (B. I. Chap. 31).

imperfecta re: "with his suit only half granted," or "before the matter was settled."

commutatio: the change was brought about by Caesar's defeat of Ariovistus.

dimiserant: "relinquished the supremacy."

quos—intelligebatur: supply *Aeduos* after *ad aequare*: "and because it was perceived that they had rivalled the Aedui in Caesar's favor:"—*adaequare*: "to make equal," "balance."—*quos=et eos.*

se—dicabant: "devoted themselves."

illi: Remi.

CHAPTER XIII.

aliquo numero: "in any consideration:" "of any account."

plebes: nom. sing. Another form is *plebs*: in older Latin *plebes* was of the fifth declension.

nullo: a dative for *nulli* as *adhibetur* governs a dative.

aere alieno: "with debts."

in hos: "over these."

illi: "the former," referring to the Druids.

intersunt: "officiate."

procurant: "superintend."

religiones: everything connected with religion—as omens, rites and ceremonies.

disciplinae=discendi: "for instruction."

hi Druids: *eos*, the Gauls.

admissum: "committed."

decreto stetit: "has abided by the decree." Note that *decreto* is ablative.

sacrificiis interdicunt: note that *interdico* takes (1) acc. of person and abl. of thing: (2) dat. of person and acc. of thing, or (3) dat. of person and abl. of thing.

quibus—interdictum: "those who are so excommunicated."

discedunt: "shrink from."

ius redditur: "is justice rendered."

honos: "public office:" *labos*, *arbos*: old form for *labor*, *arbor*.

loco consecrato: probably a sacred grove near the modern Dreux. In Britain, Anglesey was the headquarters of the Druids.

reperta translata: it may have been that Druidism was declining in Gaul before the civil power, and that there was still retained in Britain a purer form than on the continent.

CHAPTER XIV.

disciplinam: "training."

quum—utantur: "though in almost all other affairs, in public and private transactions, they use Greek letters."—*quum—utantur*: F. 196, 7; P. 99 (i).

quod velint: giving, not Caesar's reason, but the reason of the Druids.

qui discunt: for the indic. in a dependent clause in oblique narration, see F. 205–209; P. 106.

praesidio litterarum: "by the aid of letters."

hoc persuadere: "to impress this belief."

animas; "soul." A Latin plural is often represented by a singular in English. The doctrine of the transmigration of souls or metempsychosis is referred to. It is not likely that a belief in this doctrine would lead one to disregard death.

multa—disputant: "they have frequent discussions."

mundi ac terrarum: "the universe and the globe."—*mundus* (= Greek κόσμος) is the whole universe of visible things—earth, sky, sun, moon and stars.

de—natura: "science," literally, "the nature of things:" the celebrated poem of Lucretius that relates the origin and growth of the universe is called by the name *De Rerum Natura.*

CHAPTER XV.

quum—usus: "whenever there is necessity:" note *quum* with indicative. F. 203.

incidit: "breaks out."

fere taken with *quotannis.*

uti—propulsarent: in apposition to *quod.*

versantur: "engage in."

atque—habet: "and the number of retainers and dependants each one has about him is in proportion to his distinction for birth and wealth." *ambactos*: said to be derived from the Keltic *ambaig*, "to lead" or "to drive around one:" hence, "one led" or "one who moves about a person." Others derive it from the German *and*, "against," and *bak*, "back:" hence "one who stands behind his lord in battle."

hanc—noverunt: "this is the only way they know of obtaining influence and power." Note that *primus*, *ultimus*, *solus* are not used with a predicate clause as in English. "He was the first to do it" is *ille primus id fecit.*

CHAPTER XVI.

dedita: "devoted."

pro victimis: Caesar probably refers to a state of matters that was in vogue before his days.

pro—reddatur: this is the same as the Hebrew principle: "whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed."

habent instituta: nearly the same meaning as *instituerunt*.

immani magnitudine: ablative of description. These were probably huge cages of human form.

supplicio: "execution."

eius generis: "of criminals of this sort."

descendunt: "they have recourse to."

CHAPTER XVII.

Mercurium: Caesar means that the Britons worship a deity whose attributes resemble those of the Roman Mercury. This deity was called Teutates (Tuw Taith, the God of travelling), probably the same as the Theut, of the Phoenicians and Toth, of the Egyptians. *Apollo* was the Keltic *Belenus* or *Belen*, probably connected with *βέλα*, a Spartan name for the sun; so also *ἀβέλιος*=*ἥλιος* of ordinary Greek. *Mars* was the Keltic Hesus or Esus, the terrible war god. *Minerva* (from *moneo*, 'advise:" hence) "the suggester of ideas," as Teutates or Mercury develops ideas into arts. *Iupiter* was the Keltic *Taranis* or "God of thunder" (from the Keltic *taran*, "thunder.")—*mercaturas*: the derivation of Mercurius is from the same root as *merx*, *merces*, *mercatura*.

operum—initia: "the elements of useful labours and of the arts."

reliquas res: "the rest of the spoil."

ei rei: "for that offence."

CHAPTER XVIII.

Dite: as Dis is Pluto, the god of the nether world, the statement here is "that they sprung from the realms of night," *i.e.*, that they were "aboriginal."

ob eam causam—finiunt: the early Germans did the same and probably also the early Greeks. We still find a survival of this custom in our fortnight (=fourteen nights), sennight (=seven nights). A Welchman calls a week "eight nights."

ut—subsequatur: instead of saying as we do "the first day of the month," "the first day of the year," the Gauls would have said, "the first night of the month," "the first night of the year." This probably arose from the fact that the *moon* (as the name implies, from MA, "to measure") was the measurer of time among these early Kelts as it was among other primitive nations.

adsistere: scil. *se* "to place himself."

CHAPTER XIX.

viri: "the husbands:" cp. German *Mann*.

dotis nomine: "as dowry."

tantas—communicant: "so much from their own wealth they add to the dowry after a valuation has been made." This means that the husband added to the dower of his wife as much as she brought. The income from this common fund was saved up, and when the husband or wife died the whole went to the survivor. This, however, could apply only to the rich.

ratio: "an account."

uter—superarit: dependent question; hence subjunctive.

pater familiae: for the archaic but more common *pater familias*.

loco natus: ablative of origin: so with *editus*, *ortus*, *oriundus*, *genitus*.

et—venit: "and if there is any suspicion concerning his death." Note *in suspicionem venire* is passive of the deponent *suspicor*.

de uxoribus: this implies polygamy among the rich nobles.

in servilem modum: "as (we do) in the case of slaves."

excruciatas, scil., *uxores*. Among the Romans, citizens gave their evidence on oath; slaves alone could be examined by torture.

pro cultu: compared with the means of living the Gauls had." The French people still like showy parades and brilliant *fêtes*.

cordi fuisse: "to have been dear:" *cordi esse=gratum esse*: probably a predicative dative: the one the dative *to* which (*vivis*) and the other (*cordi*) dative *for* which.

supra hanc memoriam: "before my time:" cp. *hic homo=ego*: *haec vita*; "the present life."

iustis—confectis: "when the due ceremonies were ended:" cp. *iustus triumphus*.

CHAPTER XX.

commodius: "in a more regulated way" than others.

habent—sanctum: "have a rule laid down by law." Note the difference between *sanxerunt*, "have passed a law," expressing the completion of an act and *habent sanctum*, have a law passed some time since and still in force.

rumore aut fama: distinguish *rumor*, an indefinite rumor: *fama*, a distinct statement. This provision by law was probably enacted to check the impetuosity of the Gauls.

neve=et ne: F. 186, 6; P. 99 (a), 1.

cum quo—communicet: "impart it to any one else."

ex usu: "of advantage."

de re publica: "of public affairs."

CHAPTER XXI.

Germani—differunt: i.e., the customs of the Germans differ greatly from these.

Druides habent: we know, however, that the Germans had priests and priestesses, though they may have had nothing corresponding to the Druids.

qui—praesint=*ut ei—praesint*: "to preside over religious matters."

student: "pay heed to."

quos cernunt: a kind of nature worship seems to have been the religion of the Germans. It is probable that Caesar means by Vulcanus, the *welkin* (Wolken himmel,) or firmament. We know that they worshipped many other gods not named by Caesar.

acceperunt: this statement is contradicted by Tacitus (De Mor. Ger. Chap. 9), who says that the Germans worshipped Mercury, Hercules and Mars, and that some of the Suevi worshipped Isis. By Mercury is probably meant *Woden* or *Odin*: by Hercules is meant *Thor*; by Mars, *Tyr* or *Zio*, the god of war; by Isis, *Freia*, the wife of Odin.

in—consistit: "is spent in military pursuits."

ab parvulis: "from their earliest childhood:" cp. ἐκ παίδων.

impuberes: "unmarried."

CHAPTER XXII.

modum certum: "a fixed amount."

in annos singulos: "each year," "yearly."

gentibus cognationibusque: "to clans and bodies of kinsmen."

quantum—agri: "they assign as seems good to them the amount and locality of the lands for those clans and groups of kinsmen which at the time form a community."—*agri* is genitive depending on *quantum*.

alio: "to a different quarter."

ne—commutent: i.e., *timent ne—commutent*: "they are afraid that enticed by long continued residence they may exchange their attention to war for agriculture."—*muto* and its compounds may mean (1) to give one thing in exchange for another and hence has the acccusative of what is given and the ablative of what is received or (2) to receive one thing in exchange for another and hence has the accusative of what is received and the ablative of what is given. The former is the construction here. The ablative in either case is the ablative of *exchange* or *price*. If we had here *studio* - *agriculturam* the meaning would be the same thing.

latos fines parare: "to obtain too large lands."

potentioresque—expellant; show the ambiguity of this sentence.

ne—aedificent: "lest with too great care they may build houses to withstand the seasons of cold and heat." Note the force of the plurals. The Germans had simply huts, and made with no great care, so that the inhabitants may not lose their hardy nature of living out of doors.

qua=aliqua: note that *quis=aliquis* after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*, *quanto*.

nascuntur: the indicative is used because this is Caesar's own statement. If the subjunctive *nascantur* had been used, the reason would have been given on the statement of the Germans.

ut—videat: the construction is *hoc fit ut—videat*: "this is done so that they (the chiefs, scil. *magistratus*) may be able to keep the inferior sort together by contentment, since each one sees that his own means are as great as those of the men in authority."

animi aequitate: cp. *aequus animus*, "resignation."

CHAPTER XXIII.

civitatibus, indirect object after *est*, the subject of which is the clause *quam—habere*.

quam latissime: "as far and wide as possible: cp. ὡς with superlatives in Greek: ως τάχιστα.

proprium virtutis: "a proof of courage."—*prope*: "near."

hoc referring to the clause *repentinae incursionis timore sublato*: "since a danger of a sudden raid had been removed."

bellum—aut illatum defendit aut infert: "either repels an aggressive war or invades another's territories." When does *quum* take the subjunctive? F. 203; 188, 3; 196, 7; P. 99, (f), (g), (i). After *infert* scil. *bellum aliis civitatibus*.

qui—praesint=ut ei—praesint: for dative see F. 120; P. 82 (e) ii.: for subjunctive. F. 184, 1; P. II. 25.

nullus—magistratus: the system among the Germans was not one of centralization, as among the Romans, but one of local administration.

regionum—atque pagorum: "of districts and indeed, of townships." The *pagus* was evidently a division of the *regio*. The former is from root PAG, "to bind," hence "a district within certain bounds:" cp. δῆμος (from δέω, "I bind").

ius dicunt: "declare what is law:" a Roman magistrate is said *ius dicere* who has *iuris dictio*, the right to declare what is law.

latrocinia—infamiam: "robberies involve no disgrace:" cp. Lady of the Lake, Canto V. Stanza 7. This was a common belief among barbarous nations.

praedicant: "they openly declare." Distinguish in meaning *praedĭco*, *āre*, and *praedīco*, *ĕre*.

ubi quis: "whenever one."

qui—profiteantur=tales ut sequi velint profiteantur: "let such as wish to come give in their names." This is the indefinite use of the relative: F. 188, 5, (a).

ducuntur: "are held:" both *habeo* and *duco* have this meaning.

omniumque—derogatur: "and all credit in everything is after this withheld from them."—*derogare* is generally used in the sense of to repeal a part of a law. The construction is *de aliqua re* or *ex aliqua re alicui derogare.*

qui communicatur: Tacitus (Germania, Chap. 21) says that the Germans treat strangers and friends alike. This seems a general rule, at least in all primitive civilization.

CHAPTER XXIV.

ultro—inferrent: "they carried on aggressive wars without provocation," *i.e.*, they even invaded Germany. Note the *asyndeton* in *superarent*, *inferrent* and *mitterent*. The course of the Volcae Tectosages seems to have been from the east, and they seem to have settled in that part of Asia Minor called *Galatia*, and in *Bavaria*, *Bohemia* and *Moravia* in Europe.

Hercynia silva: the Hercynian wood includes the Bacenis (C. 10); it embraces the Odenwald, Thuringerwald, Erzgebirge, Riesengebirge and the Carpathians.

Eratostheni: an astronomer, mathematician and geographer of Alexandria, who flourished about 200 B.C.

video: Caesar appears to be acquainted with the works of these authors.

Volcae Tectosages: in Caesar's time they occupied the part of the *Provincia* near the Pyrenees, in the south of Gaul near the modern Toulouse *(Tolosa).*

occupaverunt: "seized."

ad hoc tempus: "up to the present time."

iustitiae—opinionem: "reputation for justice and warlike valour."

inopia: lack of resources, "poverty:" *egestas*, "want," "need," refers rather to the condition arising from poverty.

eodem—utuntur: "they have the same sort of diet and clothing."

rerum: "commodities."

multa—largitur: "greatly contributes to increase their stores and to supply their wants." This shews that luxury prevailed among the Keltae.

illis: the Germans: *ipsi*: the Gauls.

CHAPTER XXV.

supra: Chapter 21.—*demonstrata*: "mentioned."

latitudo: "breadth" from North to South.

novem dierum: descriptive genitive depending on *iter.*—*iter*: accusative of extent of space.

expedito: "for a man lightly equipped," *i.e.*, for a rapid traveller. Herodotus uses the same expression in estimating, a measure of distance: B. I. 72: *μῆκος ὁδοῦ, εὐζώνῳ ἀνδρὶ πέντε ἡμέραι ἀναισιμοῦνται.* A day's journey in Herod. IV. 101 is 200 stadia or about 23 miles: so that the distance here would be about 200 miles.

finiri: "computed."

noverunt, scil., *Germani*. The Germans were not acquainted with the Roman practise of setting up mile stones *(lapides)* on their roads.

oritur, scil., *Hercynia silva*.

recta—regione: literally, "in a straight line with the river Danube," *i.e.*, parallel to the river Danube.

Dacorum et Anartium: these tribes extended beyond the Theiss *(Tibiscus)* in Hungary. So *regione moveri* is "to proceed in a straight line;" *e regione castrorum*, "opposite to the camp."

sinistrorsus=sinistr-o-versus: "to the left" of the Danube, towards the Carpathian mountains: cp. *prorsus=pro-versus*.

diversis—regionibus: "in a direction away from the river."

huius: i.e. Western Germany.

initium: "the further end."

quum—processerit: "even though he has gone a journey of sixty days." —*iter*: cognate object: F. 95, 1; P. 83 (d).

quae—visa sint=talia ut—visa sint: the indefinite relative: F. 188, 5; P. II., 38, 39. So in *quae—differant*.

CHAPTER XXVI.

bos cervi figura: "an animal with the form of a deer." The word *bos* is often used for any horned animal and even elephants which were called *Lucae boves*. Others take the word to mean not a reindeer but a bison.

unum cornu: this statement is probably a misstatement. He may have seen the animal from one side, or one horn may have been shed.

palmae ramique: "branching hands": hendiadys. This evidently points to the reindeer.

CHAPTER XXVII.

alces: "elks:" the *elendthier* of the German and the *elan* of the French.

capreis=figurae caprarum.

varietas pellium: "the spotted skin."

mutilae—cornibus: literally, "they are blunted in their horns," *i.e*, "their horns are blunt."

sine nodis articulisque: hendiadys, "without knotted joints. The awkward gait of the elk may have given rise to this belief.

si—conciderunt: "if they fall to the ground by any accident."—*quo*=*aliquo*.—*concido* is often said to fall in a heap.

ad eas scil. *arbores*.

paulum modo: "only a short time."

quum est adversum: when does *quum* take the indicative and when, the subjunctive? F. 203, 188, 196; P. 99 (f), (g), (i).

quo—consuerint: subjunctive of dependent question.

omnes—relinquatur: "they either undermine all the trees in that place at the roots or cut them so far as to leave the external (*summa*) appearance of a standing tree."—*eo loco*=*in eo loco*. Others translate *summa—stantium*: "an undistinguishable likeness to standing trees."

consuetudine=*ex consuetudine*.

affligunt, scil., *alces*: so also *ipsae*, scil., *alces*.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

uri: probably the *urus* was the German aurochs (*bos primigenius*), now almost confined to the forest marshes of Lithuania, and the district between the Caspian and Black Sea. Fossil remains of these have been found not unfrequently in Germany and France.

paulo infra elephantos: the aurochs are said to have been about six feet high at the shoulder, (not so high as an elephant); are generally shy, but fight fiercely, if attacked.

hos—interficiunt=*hos studiose foveis capiunt et interficiunt*: "they catch them in pitfalls with great care and kill them."

se durant: "harden themselves."

quae sint testimonio: "to serve as an evidence." The subjunctive is the subjunctive of the relative expressing purpose.—*quae*=*ut*—*ea*: F. 184, 1; P. II., 25. The dative *testimonio* is the dative of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c).

ne excepti: "not even when caught very young."—*excipere* in Caesar may mean: (1) "to lie in wait for," as here: (2) "to welcome:" (3) "to receive," or "to succeed to."

ab labris: "at the rim": cp. *ab radicibus*: chap. 27. Drinking horns such as here described were common in early days.

CHAPTER XXIX.

Caesar: the narrative broken off at Chap. X. is here resumed.

supra: Chapter XXII.

auxilia : the reinforcement sent by the Germans to the Gauls.

in extremo ponte : "at the end of the bridge." The garrison was probably stationed on the west bank, at the other end of the bridge.

frumenta : "crops :" it was now in the latter part of July or early in August.

Arduennam : see B. v., Chap. 3.

milibus amplius quingentis, scil., *passuum* : this is an error.

L. Minucium Basilum : he was one of Caesar's naval commanders during the civil war. Like Trebonius (mentioned Chap. 23.) he turned against his general and was one of his assassins. A year later his cruelty provoked his household slaves to murder him.

si : "to see whether."

CHAPTER XXX.

opinionem : "expectation."

quo in loco = *ad eum locum in quo.*

dicebatur, scil., *Ambiorix.* Notice that *dicor* is personal and not impersonal in the passive when said of a person. Translate : *it is said that Caesar was the greatest general among the Romans.*

quum—tum=et—et.

ipsum : Ambiorix.—*eius* : Basilus : *ipsum* and *illum* below refer to Ambiorix.

incideret, scil., *Basilus.*

magnae fuit fortunae : "so it was a piece of great good fortune for Ambiorix to escape from death.

silvā : ablative of means.

propinquitates : "vicinity."

sic—valuit : "such was the power of fortune both as to his (Ambiorix) getting into danger and getting out of it.

CHAPTER XXXI.

judicio : abl. of cause, "purposely," "designedly."—note *ne—an* in double questions=*utrum—an* : F. 177, 5 ; P. II., 42, 44.

tempore exclusus : "prohibited by want of time."

prohibitus : "prevented."

continentes paludes : called *perpetuae*, Chap. 5, *i.e.*, "land unbroken by the sea."

insulis : "the low lands that became islands when the tide ran in."

omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem: "cursing Ambiorix with all kinds of imprecations."

qui—fuisset=quippe qui fuisset: "inasmuch as he had been the instigator of this plot:" for subjunctive: F. 198, 4; P. 99, (g) iii.

taxo: the juice of the yew leaves is said to be poisonous: though the berries are said to be harmless.

CHAPTER XXXII.

Segni: the name still survives in the town of *Sègne* as that of the Condrusi does in the district of *Condroz*.

oratum: explain the use of the supine in *-um*: F, 174, 2 and 3; P. 105.

unam: "one and the same," "identical."

si—violaturum: in direct discourse=*si ita feceritis—non violabo.*

Aduatucam: the modern site may be Tongern, in the Belgian province of Limburg, on the Jaar, a branch of the Maas.

quum—tum=et—et: "both—and."

reliquis rebus: "in other respects."

sublevaret, scil., *Caesar*. The soldiers were then relieved of the labour of fortifying the camp.

praesidio impedimentis: "to guard the baggage:" dative *for* which and dative *to* which: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

ei legioni castrisque: dat., F. 120.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ad Oceanum versus=adversus Oceanum.

Aduatucis adiacet: for the dative: F. 120.

Scaldem: the Scheldt which flows into the Meuse (*Mosa*) according to Caesar. The Scheldt does not flow into the Meuse, and as the distance between Tongern and it seems too great to be traversed twice, as Caesar travelled, in seven days, some read *Sabim* (Sambre) which occurs in the Greek version.

post diem septimum: literally, "during the seventh day afterwards."

ad quam diem: note the change in gender in *dies.* Generally *dies* feminine is used for "time."

in praesidio: at Aduatuca.

revertantur=ut revertantur.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

quod—defenderet=tale ut—defenderet: "was able to defend:" indefinite relative.

abdita: "secluded."

consederat, i.e., *ibi consederat* as correlative to *ubi.*

vicinitatibus = vicinis : "neighbours," abstract for concrete : so *remigium*, "crew ;" *servitium*, "slaves."

requirebat : "demanded."

in—tuenda : "in protecting the main body of the army."

universis scil., *Romanis.*

quae—pertinebat : "and this circumstance, still, in some degree, concerned the safety of the army."

longius : "too far."

confertos : "in close order :" from *confercio.*

sceleratorum : "of these villains :" referring to the Eburones, who had destroyed the fifteen cohorts under Cotta and Sabinus. No doubt Caesar felt bitter hatred against this tribe.

in—difficultatibus : "considering the nature of the difficulties."

quantum : supply *tantum* before *providebatur.*

Gallorum vita. Caesar would rather sacrifice the lives of the Gauls than those of the Romans.

CHAPTER XXXV.

reverti : distinguish *redeo* and *revertor* in meaning.

legionem : the 14th under Cicero, and the stores at Aduatuca (Tongern).

quantum—possit : dependent question.

cognosci potuit : impersonal use of *possum* with passive infinitive. Translate and parse each word in *hoc fieri potest ; hoc facere potest.*

afferat : same kind of subjunctive as *defenderet* in Chap. XXXIV.

ultro : connected with *ultra*, "beyond." Translate "further."

ex fuga : "after their flight."

triginta millibus : ablative of measure of difference. The place was near Bonn.

supra : B. IV., Chap. 16.

primos fines : "the border of the territories of the Eburones."

fortunatissimis : predicate after *esse* attended to the case of *quibus* as is usual in Caesar,

tribus horis : "within three hours." What other ways of expressing this?

tantum : "so small."

cingi : "be manned," literally "encircled."

CHAPTER XXXVI.

praeceptis Caesaris: ablative of cause: "according to the instructions of Caesar." The year before B.C. 54 Cicero had withstood the attack of the Nervii.

qui—continuisset: "although he had kept:" *qui* is here concessive: F. 196, 8; P. 99 (i),

quemquam; here an adjective for the more usual *ullus.* Distinguish *quisquam, ullus* and *quivis, quilibet*: F. 132: P. 95.

illius=Ciceronis.

ullum—posset: "not expecting that any casualty could arise, by which within a distance of three miles any disaster could be inflicted, when nine legions and a large force of cavalry were in advance of him, and when the enemy was defeated and almost exterminated."—*posset*: subjunctive as expressing Cicero's opinion: *afferebatur* and *audiebat* above express the simple fact.—*quo* is the simple ablative: "by which."—*offendi* is used impersonally.

frumentatum: supine.

hoc spatio dierum: "during this period of time."

sub vexillo: "as a separate party:" literally "under a flag." The *vexillum* was a square flag hung from a cross-piece of wood on a pole.

vis: often used in the sense of quantity, number.

subsederat: only used here in the sense "had been left."

facta potestate: "having obtained permission."

CHAPTER XXXVII.

casu: "juncture."

eodem illo cursu: "at the same full gallop."

ab decumana porta: "on the side of the gate in the rear:" for the position of the *porta decumana* see *Castra* (in Introduction).

obiectis silvis: causal abl. abs.: "inasmuch as woods obstructed the view."

usque eo: literally, "even to such a degree:" *i.e.*, "nay, so completely was this the case."

qui=tales ut: translate, "that such merchants as had their tents beneath the rampart had not an opportunity to withdraw." These merchants had not gone with the foraging party. They had their tents just outside the rear gate. For *vallum* see Introduction (*Castra*).—*tenderent*: *tendere* is often used both in poets and historians "to tent:" cp. Ovid, Heroides, I, 35: *Illic Aeacides, illic tendebat Ulixes* and Vergil, Aen. II. 29: *Hic saevus tendebat Achilles.*

re nova: "by the novelty of the occurrence."

in statione: "on guard," closely taken with *cohors.*

si: "to see if:" so B. v. Chap. 29.

aditus: "points of attack."

locus: the camp was on a high hill.

totis castris: abl. of place without preposition, as often when the noun is qualified by *totus*: cp. *totā Graeciā.*

quo signa ferantur: "when an advance should be made:" dependent question, therefore, subjunctive: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

plerique—fingunt: "most of them imagine new superstitious alarms suggested by the place."

calamitatem: described in B. v. Chap. 26–37.

occiderint: Caesar is thinking of the thought of the soldiers, hence the subjunctive.

barbaris: translate as if=*barbarorum.*

ex manibus dimittant: "let go;" "let slip."

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

primum pilum duxerat: "had held the office of chief centurion" *(primipilus).*

ad Caesarem: "in Caesar's army," "in Caesar's service." He was in the 12th legion.—*ad*=*apud.*

superioribus proeliis: with the Nervii (B. II. Chap. 25); among the Alps (B. III. Chap 8).

diem iam quintum: acc. duration of time.

diffisus: *audeo, gaudeo, soleo, fido* and its compounds are semi-deponents. What verbs govern a dative? F. 105, 9 and 120; P. 82 (e), i. ii.

relinquit animus Sextium: "Sextius faints." Distinguish *relinquere animum,* "to faint": *relinquere animam,* "to die."

per manus: "passed from hand to hand."

CHAPTER XXXIX.

exaudiunt: "hear from afar." Note the force of *ex.*

sit: subj. of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

quae: consecutive relative=*ut ea.* The foragers were three miles off.

modo—imperiti: "those who were lately enlisted, and therefore, unacquainted with the usages of war." He refers to the 14th legion: B. VI. Chap. 33; B. VI. Chap. 1.

quin perturbetur: F. 188, 6; P. II., 156-158. *quin*=*qui non*: "as not to be confused."

CHAPTER XL.

hinc—coniciunt: "driven thence by a charge, they try to force their way into the line and among the companies." The *signum* of the *manipulus* was originally a pole with a wisp of grass on the top. Afterwards the pole was changed into a spear and the wisp of grass was replaced by gilded, silver or bronze figures of animals. Finally the eagle (*aquila*) was retained as the standard of the legion. The cohorts do not seem to have had any distinct *signa*.

alii—censent: "some of the soldiers advise that they should form in mass and break through (the Germans)." The *cuneus* ("wedge") is described by Vegetius as a number of infantry in close rank with the head of the column narrow and widening towards the rear, and formed to break the enemy's line. In shape it was like a Δ. It was called also *caput porcinum* or "pig's head."

quoniam—sint: "since (they say) the camp is so near:" for the subjunctive: F. 198, 2; P. 99, (g), i.

at: "still," "at least."

alii, scil., *censent.*

ad unum omnes: "to a man."

nullo percepto: "as yet not seeing at all what military practice required."

eam—vim celeritatemque: note the antecedent is put in the relative clause.

se must be taken with both *recipere* and *demiserunt.*

virtutis causa: "on account of bravery." There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army: see Introduction p. xx., (a).

ante—laudem: "their renown for military prowess previously acquired."

pars: two cohorts (over 700 men) perished.

CHAPTER XLI.

expugnatio: "taking by storm," different from *oppugnatio*, "storming."

fidem non faceret: "he could not induce (Cicero and his soldiers)."—*fidem facere* is to give confidence or to make believe.

ut is consecutive: "thus fear had so taken possession of the minds of all."

paene—mente: "almost bereft of reason."

neque—contenderent: "and they were maintaining that, had the Roman army been unharmed the Germans would not have attacked the camp."—*incolumi exercitu*: abl. abs.

CHAPTER XLII.

eventus: acc. pl.: "the vicissitudes," "the chances."

unum acc. after *questus*: "complaining of (only) one thing."

quod—essent emissae: virtual oblique narration and hence subjunctive.

casu=*casui*, dative: ("saying that) for not even the slightest chance, etc."

iudicavit: "concluded."

avertisset, scil., *fortuna.*

optatissimum—obtulerunt: "had incidentally rendered a most acceptable service to Ambiorix."

CHAPTER XLIII.

praeda: cattle and other animals as shown by *agebatur.*

frumenta: different kinds of grain: hence, plural.

anni tempore: autumn rains had set in.

in praesentia: "for a time."

his, dative: to be construed with *pereundum.*

in eum locum: "to such a pass." Translate: "and often matters came to such a pass from the number of the horse that were scattered in all directions, that the captain declared Ambiorix had just been seen by them in flight, and that he had not yet gone completely out of their sight; insomuch that some, who thought to stand high in the favor of Caesar, inspired with the hope of overtaking him, and undertaking a task of infinite labor, almost overpowered nature by their zeal.' —*ventum est*: F. 164, 2; P. 72.—*diviso equitatu*: abl. abs.

ad summam felicitatem: "to complete success."

atque ille—eriperet: "while he kept snatching himself from their hands by the aid of hiding places in forests and passes."

CHAPTER XLIV.

damno: abl. of accompaniment: F. p. 12, 3; P. 85 (e).

Durocortorum: from DUR, "water:" now Rheims on the Vêle, a branch of the Seine.

more maiorum: after Roman fashion, the condemned man was first flogged and then beheaded.

quibus interdixisset: "when he had forbidden these the use of fire and water," *i.e.*, when he had banished them. The expression *aquae et ignis interdictio* is said of a person banished. The banished person might go anywhere out of the province from which he was banished. Here it means banished from Gaul.

ut—instituerat: cp. B. V. Chap. I, *ut quotannis facere consuerat.*

conventus agendos: "to hold assizes" in Cisalpine Gaul. "Holding assizes" was the regular duty of the *consul* or *proconsul* of the province.

PROPER NAMES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. =adjective ; f. =feminine ; m. =masculine ; N. =noun ; n. neuter ; pl. plural ; sing. =singular.

A.

Acc-o, -ōnis, N. m. : Acco, chief of the Senones.

Ădŭātŭc-ī, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : the *Aduatuci*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*. According to Caesar they were descended from the Cimbri and Teutones, who had been left behind to guard the baggage and cattle when these two nations made a descent on Italy (B. II., C. XXIX.). This is, however, contradicted when he says that the Belgae were the only Gallic tribe who kept the Cimbri and Teutones out of their territory. They lived near the confluence of the Sabis (*Sambre*) and the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Aedŭus, -a, -um. ; adj. : an *Aeduan*. The Aedui were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the *Allier*, the middle *Loire*, and the *Saône*, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was *Bibracte*. When Caesar came to Gaul, he found the *Aedui* had been overcome by their rivals the *Arverni* and the *Sequani*, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the Aedui, and restored them to their former place of power.

Afrĭcus, -i ; m : the *south-west* wind. Still called by the modern Italians *Africo*.

Agedincum, -i ; N. : capital of the Senones on the Yonne, a tributary of the Seine: now called *Sens*.

Ambĭōrix, -īgis ; m. : *Ambiorix*, chief of the Eburones.

Anartes, -ĭum ; m. : a Dacian tribe on the Theiss.

Ancalites, -ĭum ; m. : a British tribe, near Oxford, that surrendered to Caesar.

Antistius, -i ; m. : *Caius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Apoll -o, -ĭnis ; m. : Apollo, a god, son of Jupiter and Latona, identified by Caesar with a Gallic divinity.

Arduenn-a, -ae ; f. : the *Ardennes* forest of Gaul. According to Caesar, it reached from the Rhine and the territories of the Treveri to those of the Nervii, being upwards of fifty miles in length. The origin of the word is either from *ar denn*, i.e. "the profound," "the deep" (forest), or *ard* "hard", *venna* "pasture".

Ariovistus, -i ; N. m. : *Ariovistus*, a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater part of the country and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is probably from the German *Heer*, "an army" : *Fürst*, "a leader" ; or from *Aar*, "an eagle" ; *Vistus*, a Latinized form of *first=horst*, "a nest" the word would thus mean *Eyry*.

Arunculeius, -i; N. m.: *Lucius Arunculeius Cotta*, one of the legati in Caesar's army in Gaul. When Ambiorix, a king of the Eburones, was seeking to withdraw him and his colleague Sabinus from winter-quarters, Cotta was opposed to leaving the encampment but finally yielded. The Roman army was drawn into an ambuscade, and both he and his colleague fell.

Armorĭc-us, a, -um; adj.: *Armorican*. The ancient Armorica comprised modern *Brittany* and part of *Normandy*. The word is derived from *ar*, "on" and *mor*, "sea".

Arpinēius, -i; N. m.: *Caius Arpineius*, a Roman knight.

Atrĕbas, -ătis; N. m.: *the Atrebatians* were a people of *Gallia Belgica*, of high renown for valour. Their territory lay S.E. from that of the Morini and S.W. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern *Artois* in the *Department du Pas de Calais*. Their chief town was Nemetocenna (now *Arras*, or as the Flemings call it, *Atrecht*.)

Atrĭus, -i; N. m.: *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, left to look after the fleet while Caesar invaded Britain.

B.

Bacēnis, -is (scil. *sĭlva*); adj.: a forest in Germany separating the Suebi from the Cherusci. It corresponded to the western portion of the *Thuringian Forest*, and formed part of the Hercynia Silva or *Black Forest*.

Bacŭlus, -i; N. m.: *Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Balventĭ-us, -i; N. m.: *Titus Balventius*, a brave Roman centurion: v. 25.

Băsĭl-us, -i; N. m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers; afterwards one of the conspirators against him.

Belgae, -ārum; N. m. pl.: *the Belgae*, a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Keltae in the time of Caesar by the rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and the Sequana (*Seine*).

Belgĭum, -i; N. n.: the land of the *Belgae*, the modern *Belgium*.

Bellŏvăc-i, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the *Bellovaci*, a powerful nation of the Belgae, to the north of the Parisii. Their capital was Caesaromăgus, afterwards Bellovaci, now *Beauvais*.

Bibroci, tribe in S. E. Britain [*Bray?*]

Britannĭ-a, -ae; N. f.: the island of *Great Britain*

Britann-i, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the *Britons*.

Britannĭ-cus, -ca, -cum: adj.: *British*.

C.

Calēt-i, -ōrum, also **Calet-es, -ĭum**; N. m. pl.: an Armorican tribe living in Normandy.

Cantĭ-um, -i; N. n.: *Kent*, a district in England. The name is said to be derived from the German *Kante*, "a corner."

Carnūt-es, -ium; N. pl. m.: a tribe in Central Gaul; their capital was Cenabum; now *Orleans*.

Carvĭlĭ-us, -i; N. m.: a British king of Kent.

Cass-i, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a small tribe of Britain who surrendered to Caesar.

Cassivellaunus, -i; N. m.: *Cassivellaunus*; Caswallon, commander-in-chief of the British army against Caesar.

Catuvolcus, -i; N. m.; *Catuvolcus*, a chief of the Eburones, who poisoned himself after the failure of an insurrection he had promoted

Cavarīnus, -i; N. m.: a chief of the Senones.

Cavilius, -i; N. m.: a petty British chief.

Cenimagn-i, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a British tribe in Suffolk, who surrendered to Caesar.

Centrōnes, -um; N. pl.: (1) a Belgic tribe in the neighbourhood of Courtray, in West Flanders, subject to the Nervii; (2) a tribe in the Province.

Cherusc-i, -orum; N. m. pl.: a German tribe between the Weser, the Elbe, and the Hartz mountains.

Cĭcĕr-o, -ōnis; N. m.: *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, the brother of the famous orator, M. Tullius Cicero. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

Cingetŏr-ix, -īgis; N. m.; (1) a Gaul, attached to Caesar, and the rival of Indutiomarus for the chief power among the Treveri: (2) a British chief in Kent.

Cisrhēnān-us -a, -um [cis, "on this side"; Rhenus, *Rhine*]; adj.; *lying on this* (i.e. the Italian) *side of the Rhine*, i.e. the western side.

Claudi-us, -i; N. m.: *Appius Claudius*, consul with L. Domitius, B.C. 54.

Commĭ-us, -i; N. m.: *Commius*, the leader of the Atrebates.

Condrūsī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Belgic tribe on the right bank of the Meuse, near Liège, district *Condroz.*

Corus, -i; N. m.: *Corus* or *Caurus*: the *north-west* wind.

Crassus, -i; N. m.: *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, who crushed the army of Spartacus B.C. 71. He was one of the first triumvirate along with Caesar and Pompey. He and his son Publius went to Parthia and perished there B.C. 53.

D.

Dacus, -i; N. m.: *a Dacian.* The Dacians occupied the south-east provinces of the modern Kingdom of Austria.

Dānŭbĭus, -i; N. m: the Danube, the great river of Central Europe.

Dis, Dītis; N. m.: *Pluto*, god of the lower world.

Divitiăcus, -i; N. m.: (1) a Druid and chief of the Aedui who went to Rome to plead the cause of his countrymen when they were opposed by the Sequani and the Arverni in alliance with Ariovistus. He was faithful to Caesar, who rewarded him by pardoning his brother Dumnorix and the Bellovaci at his intercession. (2) A chief of the Suessiones, who held sway over a large part of Gaul and even Britain.

Domĭtĭus, -i; N. m.; *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul with Appius Claudius Pulcher, B.C. 54.

Druides, -um; N. pl. m.; *the Druids* or priests of the ancient Britons and other Keltic tribes. The probable derivation is from the Keltic *der*, "an oak"; *wydd*, "mistletoe"; and *dyn*, "a man"; hence "the man who gains supernatural information from the mistletoe on the oak."

Dumnŏrix, -ĭgis; N. m.: a chief of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He married the daughter of Orgetorix and obtained permission for the Helvetii to pass through the territory of the Sequani. He was always hostile to the Romans and was killed in B.C. 55 when trying to escape from Caesar.

Dūrocortŏrum, (Δουρικόρτορα) -ī; N. n.: capital of the Remi, now *Rheims*, situated on the Vèle, a branch of the Aisne.

E.

Eburōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: the *Eburones*, a nation of Gallia Belgica to the S.W. of the Ubii. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (*Meuse*) from the modern *Liège* to *Aix-la-Chapelle*. Their chief town was Aduatuca (B. II., C. IV.)

Eratosthĕnes, -is; N. m.: a Greek, born at Cyrene, in Africa B. C. 276: appointed librarian to the Alexandrian Library and died B.C. 192 of starvation, because he was tired of life. He acquired fame as a geographer, mathematician and critic.

Essui, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Gaul, supposed to have been the same with the Saii, and lying to the north of the Diablintes and Cenomani. Their chief city was Saii, now *Seez*, on the river Olina, now *Orne*.

F.

Fabius, -i; N. m.: *Caius Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

G.

Gallĭa, -ae; N. f.: *Gaul*, now *France* and *Northern Italy*. *France* corresponded to *Gallia Transalpina*, or *Gallia Ulterior*, or "Gaul beyond the Alps," or "Further Gaul"; the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy comprised *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Gallia Citerior*; "Gaul this side the Alps" or "Hither Gaul."

Geidūni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Geiduni* or *Gorduni* were a people of Belgic Gaul, on the sea coast, above the Morini.

Germāni, -ōrum; N, pl, m.; the *Germans*, a general name given by the Romans to the nations dwelling east of the Rhine. The word is probably from either (1) *wer*, "war" (the Romans softening w to g) and *mann*, "a man"; so that the word would mean "warriors," or (2) from the Keltic *gerr*, "war" and *mann*, "a man."

Germānĭa, -ae; N. f.: *Germany*.

Germānĭc-us, -a, -um; adj.: *German*.

Grūdii, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii, whose territory lay between the *Scaldis* (Scheldt) and the ocean. The name still survives in the modern *land van Groede* (district of Groede) above *l'Ecluse*, to the north.

H.

Harūdes, -um; N. pl. m.: a German tribe, in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head water of the river Danube. The district they occupied was in the vicinity of the present cities of *Rothwail* and *Fursternberg*. Others say they were from Jutland. They with 24,000 men crossed the Rhine to join the army of Ariovistus.

Helvĕtii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to the modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*); on the south by the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

Helvĕtĭus, -a, -um; adj.: *Helvetian.*

Hercȳnia scil. *Silva*: an extensive forest in Germany. According to Caesar, the breadth was a nine days' journey, while the length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Nemetes and Rauraci, along the Danube to the country of the Daci and Anartes. It included the present *Black Forest*, which separates Alsace and Suabia; the *Steyger* in Franconia; the *Spissard* and *Odenwald* on the borders of Hesse Darmstadt; the *Thuringer* in Thuringia; the *Bohemerwald* forming the boundary of Bohemia, and the *Hartz* forest in Lunenburg. The word is said to be from the German word *hartz*, "resin," and still remains in the present *Hartz*, or from *hart*, "high."

Hibernia, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Ireland*, for the derivation see note on B. v., C. 13.

Hispānia, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Spain.* The name is derived from a corrupt form of *ἑσπερια*, Hesperia, "the western land," from *ἕσπερος*, "the evening star"; *vesper*, "evening." From Hesperia comes by a corrupt form Hispania in Latin, the Spanish España and our modern *Spain.*

Hispānus, -a, -um; adj.: *Spanish.*

I.

Indutiŏmărus, -i; N. m. sing.: a leading man among the Treveri, and rival o Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans.

Illȳrĭcum, -i; N. m. sing.: *Illyricum* or *Illyria*, a country bordering on the Adriatic, opposite Italy.

Iūnius, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Iunius*, one of Caesar's officers, by birth a Spaniard.

Iuppĭter (gen. =*iŏvis*); N. m. sing.; *Juppiter*, son of Saturn, chief of the Roman gods.

Itălĭa, -āe; N. f. sing.: *Italy.*

Itĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: a harbour in Gaul, said to be modern *Boulogne.*

L.

Labērius, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Labĭēnus, -i; N. m. sing.: *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar and went over to the side of Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

Levāci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Belgic Gaul, on the river Scaldis (*Scheldt*) and north-west of the Nervii, lying between them and the Grudii. Their territory in part forms the modern *Louvaine.*

Lingŏnes, -um; N. pl. m.: a people of Gaul whose people inhabited Mons Vosegus (*Vosges*), and consequently the sources of the Mosa (*Meuse*) and Matrŏna (*Marne*). They had a town also called Lingones (now *Langres*) and their territory corresponded to the modern Department of *Haute Marne.*

Lucānĭus, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Lucanius*, a brave centurion.

Lugotorix, -ĭgis; N. m. sing.: a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

Lutātia, -ae; N. f. sing.: the capital of the Parisii, on an island of the Sequana (*Seine*), now *Paris* The city first began to be of importance under the first French kings and was extended to both banks of the river, the island being connected with them by bridges.

M.

Mandubratĭus, -ī; N. m. sing.: a chief of the Trinobantes in Britain, who attached himself to Caesar.

Mars, Martis; N. m. sing.: *Mars*, the Roman god of war.

Mĕldi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe on the Marne, east of the Parisii.

Mĕnăpii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of *Gallia Belgica* occupying both sides of the river Rhine. Their town was called *Menapiorum Castellum*, now, *Kessel.*

Mercūrĭus, -ī; N. m. sing.: *Mercury*, a Roman god, patron of traders and thieves; also the god of eloquence and the messenger of Jupiter. The name is from *merces*, "gain".

Mĭnerva, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom and arts (from *moneo*, "to advise," hence, "the adviser").

Minūcĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers, in the war against Ambiorix, and afterwards stationed in winter quarters among the Remi. He sided with Caesar in the civil war, but afterwards became one of Caesar's assassins. The year after Caesar's death, 43 B.C., he was killed by his own slaves

Mŏna, -ae; N. f. sing.: the island of *Anglesey.* See note v., 13.

Moritasgus, -ī; N. m. sing.: chief of the Senones, a brother of Cavarinus.

Mŏsa, -ae; N. f. sing.: the *Meuse*, or *Maas*, a river of Gaul rising among the Lingones, a little west of Mt. Vosegus and falling into the Vahalis (now *Waal*).

Mūnātius, -i; N. sing. m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's, appointed with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius to the command of three legions which wintered in Belgium.

N.

Nemētes, -um; N. pl. m.: the *Nemetes*, a German tribe, along the west bank of the river Rhine, occupying part of *Baden.* Their chief town was Noviomagus (now *Spires*).

Nervĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Nervii*, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was N.E. of that of the Atrebates. The river Scaldis (*Scheldt*) passed through part of their territories. Their chief town was Bagocum (now *Bavay*) which was afterwards supplanted by Cameracum (now *Cambray*), and Turnacum (now *Tournay*).

P.

Pādus, -ī; N. m. sing.: the *Po*, the largest river of Italy. It rises in Mons Vesulus (*Mt. Viso*), near the sources of the Druentia (now *Drance*), runs in an easterly direction for more than 500 miles and discharges its waters into the Adriatic about 30 miles south of Portus Venetus (the modern *Venice*).

Parĭsii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Parisii*, a Gallic tribe, north of the Carnutes and Senones. Their chief city was *Lutetia*, afterwards *Parisii*, now *Paris.*

Petrosidius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard bearer of Caesar's army.

Pirustae, -ārum; N. pl. m.: a tribe in Illyricum.

Plancus, -ī; N. Sing. m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe N.E. of the Atrebates, dependents o the Nervii, in West Flanders, west of the Suessiones.

Pompēïus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Cn. Pompey*: *Pompey, the Great*; see History.

Provincia, -ae; N. f. sing.: the Roman *Province* of Southern Gaul. Now *Provènce.*

Pulio, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: a centurion, rival of *Vorenus.*

R.

Rauracī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe above the Helvetii and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called Augusta Rauraxorum, now *Augst,* a small village near *Basle.*

Rēmi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a powerful Gallic tribe whose capital was Durocortorum, now *Rheims.*

Rhēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: the *Rhine*, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above *Mt. St. Gothard,* in the country of the *Grisons* It passes through Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*), afterwards through Lake Acronius (*Tell*), nearly west to Basilia (*Basle*). At this point it flows northerly, receiving various tributary streams till it enters the North Sea. The word is from the Aryan root SRU, "to flow."

Rōmānus, -a, -um: adj.: *Roman.*

Roscius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's officers sent to winter with a legion in the territory of the Esubii.

S.

Samarobrīva, -ae; N. f. sing.: a town of the Ambiani on the Samara (*Somme*); later called Ambiani, now *Amiens.*

Scaldis, -is; N. m. sing.: now the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul, rising about 15 miles south of Camaracum, now *Cambray*, and falling into the German Sea near the modern island of *Walcheren.*

Sedūnī, ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Helvetia, to the south-east of Lacus Lemannus, and occupying the head waters of the Rhine. Their chief town was Sedunum, now *Sion* or *Sillen.*

Segontiăci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Britain, living probably in the modern Hampshire.

Segŏnax, -ăcis: N. sing. m.: one of the four rulers of Kent at the time of Caesar's invasion.

Senŏnes, -um; N. pl. m.: a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, to the north-west of the Aedui. At the time of Caesar they had been reduced to mere clients of the Aedui. Their chief town was Agedincum, afterwards Senones; now *Sens.*

Sēquănī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus, the German, to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of Ariovistus, they felt severely the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (*Besançon*).

Sextius, -i; N. sing. m.: (1) *Titus Sextius*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army. (2) *P. Sextius Baculus*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army.

Silānus, -i: N. sing. m.: *Marcus Silanus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Suēbi, -ōrum: N. pl. m.: the *Suabians*, a German people who settled in the regions now known as *Bavaria* and *Würtemberg.*

Sugambri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a German nation, in Caesar's time dwelling near the Rhine, but whose earlier settlements appear to have been further i land.

T.

Tămĕsis, -is; N. m. sing.: the *Thames.*

Tasgĕtĭus, -i; N. m. sing.: the chief of the Carnutes whom Caesar restored to supreme power.

Taxĭmăgŭlus, -i; N. m. sing.: a British prince, one of the four kings of Kent.

Tectosăges, -um; N. m. pl.: a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the province. Their capital was Tolōsa (now *Toulouse*).

Tenctĕrī, orum; N. pl. m.: a German tribe who, being hard pressed by the Suebi, settled with the Usipetes in the lower Rhine.

Titurius, -i; N. m. sing.: *Q. Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's, who lost his life in an ambuscade contrived by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones.

Transrhēnānus, -a, -um; adj.: *beyond* or *on the other side of the Rhine.*

Trebōnĭus, -i; N. m. sing.: *Caius Trebonius*, a Roman knight.

Trēvĕrī, (also **Trevĭri**) **-ōrum**; N. pl. m.: the *Treveri*, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, north-east of the Rhine, between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Rhenus (*Rhine*). Their chief town was Augusta Trevirorum, now *Treves.*

U.

Ubĭī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a German nation on the right bank of the Rhine. During the reign of Augustus, they were removed by Agrippa to the opposite or left bank in Gaul. At a subsequent period Agrippīna, the mother of Nero, established a colony of veterans in their territory, called from her Colonia Agrippīna, now *Cologne.*

Usipĕtes, -um; N. pl. m.: a German nation, originally in Saxony.

V.

Vertĭco, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: a Nervian nobleman friendly to the Romans.

Vorēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: a Roman centurion, rival of Pulio.

Volcātĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: Caius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers, left in charge of the bridge over the Rhine, while Caesar went in pursuit of the Suebi.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	active.
abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
adv.	adverb.
card.	cardinal.
cf.	confer, *i.e.*, compare.
comm.	common gender.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunctive.
demonstr.	demonstrative.
dep.	deponent.
dim.	diminutive.
distrib.	distributive.
e. g.	exempli gratiâ (for instance).
=	meaning the same as.
f.	feminine gender.
freq.	frequentative.
impers.	impersonal, -ly.
incep.	inceptive.
indecl.	indeclinable.
interrog.	interrogative.
irreg.	irregular.
m.	masculine gender.
n.	neuter, neuter gender
num.	numeral.
opp.	opposed to in meaning
ord.	ordinal.
p	page.
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
pl., or plur.	plural.
prep.	preposition.
pron.	pronoun.
rel.	relative.
sc.	scilicet (one must understand).
sq.	sequens (and the following).
sing.	singular.
subst.	substantive.
sup.	superlative.
usu.	usually.
v.	verb.
v.	vide (look at).

VOCABULARY.

A.

a, ab, abs, prep. w. abl., *by, from, at, etc.*

ab-do, abdĭdi, abdĭtum, *to hide.*

ab-ĕo, īre, .vi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go away.*

ăbĭcĭo (abj.) ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to cast* or *throw away, throw down.*

ăbĭes, ĕtis, f., *fir.*

ab-sisto, ĕre, abstĭti, *to desist, stand aloof from.*

absum, abesse, abfŭi, fut. inf., abfore or abfuturus esse, *to be away from, be absent, be distant.*

ac, conj., *and, and moreover.*

accēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come* or *go near, to approach ; to be added.*

accerso (=arcesso), ĕre, īvi, ītum, *to send for, summon.* [ad-cēdo.]

accĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, no sup., *to happen.* [ad-cado.]

accīdo, ĕre cīdi, cīsum, *to cut into.* [ad-caedo.]

accĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive; to learn.* [ad-capio.]

accūrāte, adv., comp. -tius, *carefully, exactly.*

ăcerrĭme. *V.* acriter.

ăcĭes, ēi, f., *line of battle, battle array.* [root AC sharp ; "a thin line."]

ăcrĭter, adv., *fiercely, sharply*, Comp. acrius : sup. acerrime. [acer.]

actuārĭus, a, um, adj,, *impelled by oars.* [ago.]

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, up to ; by, near to.*

ădactus. *V.* adigo.

ăd-aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make equal to ; to equal, rival.*

ad-augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *to increase.*

ad-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to add.*

ad-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead to, bring to, induce.*

ădemptus. *V.* adimo.

ăd-ĕo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum, *to go to, approach.*

ădĕo, adv., *to this degree, thus, thus far, so.*

adfectus, *V.* adficio.

adfero. *V.* affero.

ad-ficio. *V.* afficio.

adflictus. *V.* adfligo.

ad-flīgo, flīgĕre, flixi, flictum, *to cast* or *throw down.*

ad-grĕgo, are, avi, atum, *to add to a flock*; adgregare, se, *to attach oneself.* [ad, grex, grego.]

ad-haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, *to stick to.*

ad-hĭbeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *to have* (one up) *to, to summon, employ, consult.* [ad-habeo.]

ad-hortor, ari, atus, *to encourage, urge on.*

ad-iaceo, ēre, iacui, no sup., *to lie near to*; with dat.

ad-ĭcio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to throw upon, add.*

ad-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to bring* or *drive to.* [ad, ago.]

ăd-ĭmo, ĕri, ēmi, emptum, *to take away, deprive of.* [ad, emo.]

ad-ĭpiscor, i, eptus, *to gain, obtain.*

adĭtus, us, m., *a going to, access, approach.* [ad, eo.]

ad-iungo, ēre, nxi, nctum, *to join to.*

ad-iūtor, ōris, m., *a helper.*

ad-iŭno, are, iūve, iūtum, *to aid.*

ad-mĭnister, tri, m., *an attendant, agent.*

ad-mĭnistro, are, avi, atum, *to manage.*

admirandus, a, um. Gerundive of admiror, *wonderful.*

ad-mīror, ari, atus, v. dep., *to wonder at, to admire.*

ad-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to admit ; commit.*

ad-mŏdum, adv., *up to the limit, much, very.*

ad-mŏneo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to advise warn.*

adŏlescens, entis, part. adolesco: as adj., *young*; as subst., comm., *a young man, youth.*

ăd-ŏrior, iri, ortus, 4 (but with some 3rd conj. forms) v. dep., *to attack.*

adpĕto (app.), ĕre, īvi, or ĭi, ītum, *to draw near, approach.*

ad-plĭco (app.), āre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to put against.*

ad-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey.*

ad-prŏpinquo (app.), āre, āvi, ātum, *to come* or *draw near to.*

adscendo. *V.* ascendo.

ad-sĭdŭus, a, um, adj., *continual, constant.* [adsideo.]

ad-sisto, ĕre, astĭti, no sup., *to stand by.*

ad-sŭēfăcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to accustom, to habituate*; in pass., *to get used* (to anything).

ad-sŭesco, ĕre, ēvi, ētum, *to grow used to, get accustomed to.*

adsum, -esse, -fui, *to be present, be at hand.*

ad-tingo, (att.) ĕre, tĭgi, tactum, *to touch, border upon.*

ad-tribuo. See attribuo.

adventus, ūs, m., *a coming, approach.*

adversus, a, um, adj., *turned towards, facing.*

ad-vŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fly to*; *to hasten off to.*

aedĭfĭcium, i, n, *a building.* [aedes, facio.]

aedĭfĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make a building, to build.* [aedes, facio.]

aeger, gra, grum, adj., *ill, sick.*

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty.*

aequĭnoctĭum, i, n, *the equinox.* [aequus nox.]

aequĭtās, ātis, f., *equality, justice, evenness*; animi aequitas, *contentment.*

aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make equal.*

aequus, a, um, adj., *equal, level, advantageous.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze*; *money.*

aestās, ātis, f., *summer.*

aestĭmātĭo, ōnis, f., *a valuation.*

aestĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to estimate. reckon.*

aestīvus, a, um, adj., *pertaining to summer; of summer.*

aestŭs, ūs, m., *heat*; *tide*; *current.*

aetās, ātis, f., *age, time of life.*

Afrĭcus ventus, *the south-west wind.*

affĕro (adf.), afferre, attŭli, allātum, irreg., *to bring forward, allege.*

affĭcĭo (adf.), ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to affect, influence*; *to visit with, treat.*

ăger, gri, m., *land, territory, domain.*

agmen, ĭnis, n., *an army on the march in column*; *a train.*

ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to do, act, drive, push forward*; *to treat* (with any one; cf. Eng., *drive a bargain*).

agrĭcultūra, ae, f., *farming, husbandry.* [aeger, colo.]

ălăcer, cris, cre, adj., *brisk, eager.*

albus, a, um, adj., *white.*

alces, is, f., *the elk.*

ălĭas, adv., *at another time*: alias.. alias..*at one time..at another time.*

aliēnatus, p. part. of alieno.

aliēno, āre, āvi, ātnm, *to derange, deprive of reason.*

ălĭēnus, a um, adj., *that belongs to another, foreign*; *aes alienum, debt.*

ălĭō, adv., *elsewhere, to another place.* [alius.]

ălĭquamdiu, adv., *for a considerable time.*

ălĭquantum, adj. used as subs., *a certain amount.*

ălĭqui, ălĭqua, ălĭquod, indef. adj., *some, any.*

ălĭquis, ălĭqua, ălĭquid, indef. pron., subst., and adj., *some one, something.*

ălĭter, adv., *otherwise, in a different way*: **aliter ac**, *differently from what, otherwise than.* [alius.]

ălĭus, ia, iud (gen. alīus, dative, alii), *other, another*; *alius..alius, one.. another*; *alii..alii, some..others.*

allĭcĭo (abl.), ĕre, lexi, lectum, a., *to draw to, to attract.*

ălo, ĕre, ălŭi, altum and ălĭtum, *to feed, nourish, foster, promote.*

alter, ĕra, ĕrum (gen. alterĭus, dat. alteri), adj., *the other of two, one of two, the other*; in plur., alteri..alteri, *the one party..the other party.*

altĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *height* or *p epth.*

altus, a, um, adj., *high, deep.*

ambactus, i, m., *a retainer, vassal.*

ambo, ambae, bo, adj., *both.*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.* [a, mens.]

āmentum, i. n., a *strap* or *thong.*

ămīcĭtĭa, ae, f., *friendship.*

ămīcus, a, um, adj., *friendly.*

obses, ĭdis, m. or f., *a hostage.* [obsideo.]

obsessĭo, ōnis, f., *a siege; blockade.*

ob-sĭdĕo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *sit down at* or *before; to beset, besiege.* [ob, sedeo.]

obsĭdĭo, ōnis, f., *a siege, blockade.* [ob, sideo.]

obstĭnāte, adv., *stubbornly.*

obstrŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to build* or *wall up, barricade.*

ob-tĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnŭi, tentum, *to have, hold, possess.* [ob, teneo.]

occāsĭo, ōnis, f., *an opportunity.* [ob. cădo.]

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting,* (occasus solis, *setting of the Sun*). [ob, cado.]

occĭdens, entis, m., *the west.* [occido.]

occĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, cīsum, *to kill, slay.* [ob. caedo.]

occultātiŏ, onis, f., *concealment.*

occulto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to conceal, hide, secrete.* [occulo.]

occultus, a. um, part. occulo; as adj., *concealed, hidden, secret.*

occŭpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take possession of, seize upon, engage in.* [ob. capio.]

oc-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run up to, come up to, meet.*

octingenti, ae, a, num, adj., *eight hundred.* [octo centum.]

octo, card. num., adj., *eight.*

oculus, i, m.. *eye.*

odium, i, n., *hatred.*

offendo, ere, fendi, fensum, *to injure.*

offĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *duty, service, allegiance.*

omitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to neglect, disregard, drop, omit.*

omnīno, adv., *altogether, at all.* [omnis.]

omnis, e, adj., *all, every.*

ŏnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to load, burden, freight.* [onus.]

ŏpĕra, ae, f., *agency, means; aid, services.* [opus.]

ŏpīnĭo, ōnis, f., *belief, expectation.* [opinor.]

ŏpis, (gen.; nom. not found), *power; aid, assistance;* opes plur. *resources.*

oppidum, i, n., *town.*

oppōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, to *confront, place opposite.*

opportunitas, ātis, f., *opportunity, fitness.*

opportūnus, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable.* [ob, portus=*at* or *before the harbour.*]

opprĭmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to crush, overwhelm, oppress; to fall upon, take by surprise.* [ob, prĕmo.]

oppugnātĭo, ōnis, f., *an attack, assault.* [oppugno.]

oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to attack, assault, storm.*

ŏpus, ĕris, n., *work; work of fortification, "defences"; need, necessity;* hence, as predicate with nom., *needful, requisite.*

ōrātĭo, ōnis, f., *a speech, harangue.* [ora.]

orbis, is, m., *a circle, ring.*

ordo, ĭnis, m., *a line, rank of soldiers;* used by Caesar=centuria, *century, company.*

ŏriens, entis, m., *the east.* [orior.]

ŏrior, īri, ortus, *to arise.*

ōro, are, avi, atum, *to beg, beseech, entreat, implore*

ōs, ōris, n., *the mouth.*

ostendo, ĕre, di, sum and tum, *to show;* se, *make their appearance.*

ostento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to display, show off, boast of, vaunt.* [ostendo.]

P.

pābŭlor, ari, ātus sum, *to forage.* [pabulum.]

pābŭlātor, ōris, m., *a forager.* [pabulor.]

pācātus, a, um, part. (of paco, *to make peaceful* [pax]). as adj., *peaceful.*

pāco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to quiet, reduce to state of peace.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

pāgus, i, m, *a canton, district, village* (hence our word *pagan*).

pălam, adv., *openly, undisguisedly.*

palma, ae, f., *the palm of the hand, the blade of an oar.*

pălūs, ūdis, f., *a marsh, morass, swamp.*

pār, păris, adj., *equal.*

parco, ĕre, pĕperci, parsum, *to spare, have mercy on.*

părens, entis, m. and f., *a parent.* [pario.]

pārĕo, ēre, ŭi, pārĭtum, *to obey, submit to.*

părĭo, ĕre, pĕpĕri, partum, *to bring forth* (hence), *to produce, bring about, secure.*

păro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get* or *make ready, prepare.*

pars, partis, f., *a part, portion*: in utramque partem, *on both sides, either way, upon either view of the case.*

partim, adv., *in part, partly.* [pars.]

partus, a, um, part. pario.

parvŭlus, a, um, adj., dim., *little, petty, trifling*; of age, *little, young.* [parvus.]

passus, ūs, m., *a step, pace*; as a measure of length, about five of our feet, *i.e.*, a double pace: mille passuum, *a* (Roman) *mile*=about 1,618 yards; *V.* note, B. v., chap. 2.

pătĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to lie open; to stretch, extend.*

păter, tris, m., *a father.*

păterfămilĭae (or familias), m., *the master of a household, head of a family.*

pătĭentĭa, ae, f., *endurance.* [patior.]

pătĭor, i., passus, *to suffer, allow.*

paucĭtas, ātis, f., *fewness, scarcity.* [paucus.]

paucus, a, um, adj., *few, little* (very rare in sing.); as subst., **pauci**, ōrum, m., *few, a few.*

paulātim, adv., *little by little, by degrees, gradually.* [paulum.]

paulisper, adv., *for a little while.* [paulum.]

paulo, adv. (with comparatives), *by a little, a little, somewhat.*

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

pax, pācis, f., *peace.* [The root of the word is seen in paciscor, pango, whence our *pact, compact.*]

pĕcūnĭa, ae, f., *money.* [pecus, because, in early times, *wealth* was *cattle.*]

pĕcus, ŏris, n., *a flock, herd, cattle.*

pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier.*

pĕdĭtātus, us, m., *foot-soldiers, ininfantry.* [pedes, pes.]

pellis, is, f., *a hide, skin.*

pendo, ĕre, pĕpendi, pensum, *to weigh out;* (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal; hence) *to pay.*

per, prep, w acc., *through;* showing the agent or means, *by, by means of.*

pĕr-ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to go through with, complete, finish.*

perceptus, v. percipio.

percĭpĭo, ĕre, cepi, ceptum, *to take note of, receive, learn.*

percontātĭo, ōnis, f., *question, inquiry.* [percontor.]

percussus, a, um., part., percutio.

per-cŭtĭo, ĕre, cussi, cussum, *to pierce* or *strike through.* [quatio.]

per-disco, ĕre, dĭdĭci, *to learn thoroughly, get off by heart.*

per-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead through*; *to prolong*; *to bring* or *win* (any one) *over to one's side*; *carry over.*

pĕrendĭnus, a, um, adj., *after tomorrow.* [perendie.]

pĕrĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to perish.*

pĕr-exĭgŭus, a, um., adj., *very small.*

per-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear* or *carry through; to bring; to bear, put up with, submit to;* in pass., of letters, news, etc., *to arrive, come to hand.*

per-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to accomplish, complete, finish.* [per-facio.]

perfŭga, ae, m., *deserter, fugitive.*

perĭclitor, ari, atus sum, *to endanger.*

pĕrīcŭlum, i, n., *danger.*

perlātus, a, um, part. perfero.

perlectus, a, um, part. perlego.

per-lēgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to read through.*

perlŭo, ĕre, lŭi, lūtum, *to wash*; in pass, *to bathe (one self).*

per-mănĕo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to abide, continue, remain.*

per-mitto, mittĕre, mīsi, missum, *entrust, surrender, suffer, permit.*

permōtus, a, um, part. permoveo.

per-mŏvĕo, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move thoroughly*; of the mind, *to move deeply, influence, prevail on.*

perpauci, ae, a, adj., *very few.*

per-pĕtŭus, a, um, adj., *continuing throughout, unbroken:* in perpetuum, *for all time, for ever.* [per-peto.]

per-rumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break through.*

per-scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write in full, write a full account of.*

per-sĕquor, sĕqui, sĕcūtus, *to follow up, pursue.*

persĕvēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to abide steadfastly, persist.*

perspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to look through*; *to see clearly, perceive.*

per-suādĕo, ēre, si, sum, *to persuade, prevail upon.*

perterreo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to terrify*; *thoroughly frighten.*

per-terrĭtus, a, um, part. of perterreo, *thoroughly frightened.*

pertĭnācĭa, ae, f., *obstinacy.* [pertinax, tenax, teneo.]

per-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to stretch out, reach, extend; to belong to, concern, affect.* [teneo.]

per-turbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to throw into confusion; to discompose, confound.*

per-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come to, arrive at.*

pēs, pĕdis, m., *a foot.*

pĕto, īvi, and ĭi, ītum, *to seek; ask.*

pĭĕtas, ātis, f., *dutiful conduct* towards the gods, one's parents, country, etc. [pius.]

pīlum, i, n., *a javelin.*

pilus, i, m., usually with primus, *the division of the army occupied by the triarii;* **primi pili centurio**, *a centurion of the triarii.*

pinna, ae, f., *a battlement.*

plăcĭde, adv., *calmly.*

plāco, are, avi, atum, *to reconcile, appease.*

plānē, adv., *clearly.*

plebs, bis, and plēbes, ĕi, f., *the common people, "the masses"* (opp. to the nobles).

plērumque, adv., *for the most part, mostly.*

plērusque, răque, rumque, adj., (rare in sing.); plerīque, plur., *very many, the most part, the majority.*

plumbum, i. m., *lead;* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrĭmum, adv., *most, very much:* ei debere, *to be very greatly indebted to, under very great obligations to*

plūs, plūris (in plur., plūres, plūra,) *more*, and plūrĭmus, a, um, *most*, adj., comp. and sup. of multus. (N. B., the sing. plus is generally a neut. subst. or an adv.)

pōcŭlum, i. n., *a cup, a drinking-vessel.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*

pollĭcĕor, ēri, ĭtus, *to promise.*

pollĭcĭtātĭo, ōnis, f., *a promise.*

pondus, ĕris, n., *a weight.* [pendo.]

pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put, to place;* in pass., *to rest* on, *depend* on anything.

pons, ntis, m., *a bridge.*

pŏpŭlor, āri, ātus, *to lay waste, ravage.* [pŏpŭlus.]

pŏpŭlus, i, m., *a people, the people; a district*, with reference to its inhabitants; *a community;* **Populus Romanus**, *the Roman people*, never plur.

porro, adv., *furthermore, now.*

porta, ae, f., *a gate.*

porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear* or *carry along.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

positus, v. pono.

possessĭo, ōnis, f., *a possession, a property.*

possum, posse, pŏtŭi, *to be able; I* (*thou*, etc.) *can.* [potis, sum.]

post, prep. w. acc. and adv., *after.*

post-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to postpone, put off.*

postĕā, adv., *after this* or *that, afterwards.*

postĕāquam, adv., *after that.*

postĕrus, a, um, adj., *coming after, following, next.* [post.]

postquam, conj., *after.*

postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally.* [postremus, sup of posterus.]

postŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to demand.*

pŏtens, tis, part of possum; as adj. *powerful.*

pŏtentia, ae, f., *power.* (See note, vi. 12, [potens.])

pŏtestas ātis, f., *power; opportunity.* [possum.]

potior, potīri, potītus sum, *to become master of; gain possession of;* governs abl.

potius, adv., *rather.*

praebĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to show, present.*

praeceptum, i, n., *instruction, command, injunction.*

praeceptus, a, um, part. praecipio.

prae-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to bid direct, order.* [capio.]

praecĭpŭus, a, um, adj., *special.* [praecipio.]

praeclūdo, ĕre, cludi, clusum, *to hinder, stop, close.*

prae-clūsus. See praecludo.

praeco, ōnis, m., *a crier, herald.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty.*

prae-dĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to proclaim, assert, taunt.*

prae-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to carry in front, to place* a person or thing *before* another in esteem or reputation, *to prefer.*

prae-fĭcĭo, ficĕre, fēci, fectum, *to place in front* or *at the head of, to appoint to the command of.* [prae, facio.

prae-missus, a, um, part. of praemitto, *sent on beforehand.*

praemitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send before, send in advance.*

praemĭum, ĭi, n., *a reward.* [prae, emo.]

prae-occupo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to occupy beforehand.*

prae-păro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prepare.*

praepōno, ponĕre, posui, positum, *to set anyone in command over.*

praeruptus, a, um, adj., *steep, precipitous.*

praesens, tis, adj., *that is before one, at hand, present.* [prae, sum.]

praesentĭa, ae, f., *presence, the present time*: in praesentiâ, *at hand, on the spot.*

prae-sentĭo, sentire, sensi, sensum, *to perceive beforehand.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesĭdĭum, ĭi, n., *protection, help.* [prae, sedeo.]

praesto, adv., *at hand*: praesto esse, *to present oneself.*

praesto, āre, stĭti, stĭtum and statum, *to discharge, fulfil.* **pr. fidem**, *keep one's word.*

prae-sum, esse, fŭi, *to be at the head of, in command of.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *except.*

praetĕrĕā, adv., *besides.*

prae-ūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *to burn at the point.*

praeustus, a, um, part. praeuro.

precem, preci, prece, defective noun; *prayer, entreaty.*

prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to press, press upon, oppress.*

prīdĭē, adv., *on the day before.*

prīmo, adv., *in the first place.*

prīmum, adv., *in the first place*; quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, a, um, adj. sup., *the first, first.*

princeps, ĭpis, adj., *first, chief*; as subst., comm., *a chief, chieftain.* [primus, capio.]

princĭpātus, ūs, m., *the first place, supremacy, chieftainship.* [princeps.]

pristinus, a, um, adj., *former, old, old-fashioned.*

prĭus, foll. by quam, and, as one word, **priusquam**, adv. comp., *sooner than, before, before that.*

prīvātim, adv., *as an individual, privately.*

prīvātus, a, um, part. privo, *to deprive*; as adj., *belonging to an individual, private.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of.*

prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prove, demonstrate*; *to approve.*

prō-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go forth, to advance.*

prŏcŭl, adv., *in the distance, from afar.* [procello, *to drive* away.]

prō-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbŭi, cŭbĭtum, *to sink down to the ground.*

prō-cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take care of, look after.*

prō-curro, ĕre, cŭcurri and curri, cursum, *to run forth, rush forward.*

prŏdēo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum, *to come* or *go forth.* [pro, eo.]

prōdĭtor, ōris, m., *a betrayer, traitor.* [prodo.]

prōdĭtus, a, um, part. prodo.

prō-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give forth; to hand down* (to memory), *transmit, record.*

prō-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead out.*

prōductus, a, um, part. produco.

proelior, āri ātus, *to engage, fight a battle.*

proelĭum, ĭi, n., *a battle, combat.*

prōfectĭo, ōnis, f., *a going away, setting out.* [proficiscor.]

prŏfectus, a, um, part. proficiscor.

prŏfĭciscor, profic-isci prŏfectus, *to set out, start, depart.*

prŏfĭtĕor, ēri, fessus, *to declare publicly avow*; *to offer freely, promise.* [profateor.]

prŏ-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee, decamp.*

prō-gnātus, a, um, part. [gnatus=natus, nascor], *born, sprung, descended* (from some one).

prō-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to go forward, advance.* [gradior.]

prŏ-hĭbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to keep back, hinder, prevent; to defend, protect.* [habeo.]

prō-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to throw forth, fling away.* [pro-iacio.]

prŏinde, adv., *accordingly, therefore; (in like manner).*

prōmiscuē, adv. *promiscuously, in common.*

prō-missus, a, um, pf. part. of promitto; (of hair) *long, flowing.*

prō-nuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce, proclaim.*

prŏpĕ, comp. prŏpĭus, prep. w. acc. and adv., *near, nigh.*

prō-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive before oneself, to drive back.*

prŏ-pĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hasten.*

prŏpinquĭtas, ātis, f., *nearness.* [propinquus.]

prŏpinquus, a, um, adj., *near;* as subst., **prŏpinquus**, i, m., *a kinsman, relation.*

prō-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put* or *set forth, to point out, to offer, proffer as a reward.*

prospectus, ūs, m., *view.*

prōprĭus, a, um, adj., *one's own, special*: as subst., **proprium**, ii, n., *a peculiar* or *characteristic mark, a sign.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *by reason of, on account of.*

prō-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

prō-pulsō, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to drive back, repel.* [propello.]

prō-sĕquor, i, cūtus, *to pursue, to continue the pursuit.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, *to benefit, be of service to.*

prō-tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to cover in front, cover, protect.*

prō-terrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to frighten* or *scare away, to affright.*

prōtĭnus, adv., *forthwith.*

prōvectus, see prōvĕho.

prōvĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, *to advance, carry forward.*

prōvĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come forth, to be produced, to grow.*

prō-vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, (1) *to see beforehand, to foresee,* (2) *provide for.*

prōvincĭa, ae, f., *a province.*

prōvīsus, v. prōvideo.

proxĭmē, adv.

proxĭmus, a, um, adj., *nearest, next.*

pūbes and **pūber**, ĕris, adj,, *grown up, adult;* as subst., **pūbĕres**, um, m., *grown up men, men.*

publĭcē, adv., *on behalf* or *in the name of the State* or *people.* [publicus.]

publĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take and apply to the use of the State* or *community, to confiscate.* [publicus.]

publĭcus, a, um, adj., *belonging to the people, State,* or *community.* [for populicus, from populus.]

pŭĕrīlis, e, adj., *boyish, of boyhood.* [puer.]

pugna, ae, f., *a battle, combat, fight.*

pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to clear, exculpate, excuse.*

pŭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think.*

Q.

quā, adv., *where, by which way.* [abl., f. of qui.]

quădringenti, ae, a, card, num. adj., *four hundred.* [quattuor, centum.]

quaero, ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, *to seek, ask, enquire.*

quaestĭo, ōnis, f., *an examination* or *inquisition by torture.* [quaero.]

quaestor, ōris, m., *a quaestor.*

quaestus, ūs, m, *a gaining, acquiring.* [quaero.]

quam, adv. and conj.; (1) *as*; (2) *than*: with superl. adj. or adv., *as..as possible.*

quanto, rel. adv., *by as much as, according as, the* (e.g. "*the* more, the merrier"). [quantus.]

quantus, a, um, adj., *how great, how much*; *as much as.* [quam.]

quantus-vīs, tăvis, tumvus, adj., *as great as you will, ever so great, no matter how great.* [vīs, fr. volo, vīs, vult, "*you wish.*"]

quārē, adv., *wherefore, why.* [quae, res.]

quartus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *the fourth.*

quattŭor, card. num. adj., *four.*

quĕror, quĕri, questus sum, *to complain.*

qui, quae, quod, pron. rel. and (used adjectively) interrog., *who, which, what, that.*

quīcumque, (or **-cunque**), quaecumque, quodcumque, pron. rel. *whoever, whatever, all that, everything that.*

quid, (neut. of **quis**), adv., *why?*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, pron indef., *a certain, a certain one, one.*

quĭdem, adv., *indeed.*

quĭes, ētis, f., *rest, repose.*

quĭētus, a, um, adj., *at rest, quiet, peaceful.* [quiesco, quies.]

quin, conj., *but that, that not.* [qui, how, ne.]

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, pron. interrog., *who, which; what, pray?* [In ch. 44, B. V.=uter.]

quinděcim, *fifteen.*

quingenti, ae, a, *five hundred.* [quinque, centum.]

quinquāginta, *fifty.*

quis, (quae), quid, (1) pron. interrog., *who? which? what?* (2) pron. indef. after ne, si, nisi, *any one, any thing.* **ne quis**, *in order that no man.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, pron. indef., *any.*

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, pron. indef. *any, any one, anything* (always in a negative connection).

quisque, quaeque, quodque, pron. indef., *each, every.*

quō, adv., *whither.*

quō, conj., *in order that* (used with comparative degree instead of ut).

quŏ-ad, conj., *till, until.*

quod, conj., *because; that.*

quŏn-ĭam, conj., *since, seeing, that, whereas.* [quom=cum, iam.]

quŏ-que, conj., *also, too.*

quōque, abl. of quisque, *each.*

quŏtānnīs, adv., *every year, yearly.*

quŏtĭens or **quŏtĭes**, adv., *how often, as often as.* [quot.]

quotīdiē, adv., *daily; day by day.*

R.

rādix, īcis, f., *a root.*

rāmus, i, m., *a bough, branch.*

rapīna, ae, f., *pillage, plunder.*

rārus, a, um, adj., *few, sparse, few and far between.*

rāsus, a um, part. of rado, *shaven.*

rătĭo, ōnis, f., *a reckoning, an account; a transaction, business; a care, consideration, regard* for a thing; *fashion, system, way.*

ratis, is, f., *a raft.*

rě-cēdo, ěre, cessi, cessum, *to go back, fall back, retire.*

rěcens, tis, adj., *fresh, recent.*

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat, refuge.*

rěcessus, ūs, m., *a going back, retreat.* [recedo.]

rě-cĭpĭo, ěre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive;* se, *to betake oneself* anywhere, *to retire, retreat.* [capio.]

rě-cĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to read out* (a letter, etc.).

rě-clīno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bend back, lean back.*

rě-cŭpěro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get back, recover, regain.*

rě-cūso, āre, āvi, ātum, *to object to, refuse.* [causa.]

red-do, ěre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give back, restore; to render, grant.*

reddĭtus, see red-do.

rěd-ěo, ĭi, ĭtum, īre, *to come back; to be reduced to; to be referred to.*

rěd-ĭgo, ěre, ēgi, actum, *to bring* or *reduce* to any condition. [ago.]

reditus, see red-eo.

rě-dūco, ěre, xi, ctum, *to lead back, draw off* troops.

rěfectus. *V.* reficio.

rěfěro, -ferre, rettŭli (retuli), rělātum, *to carry back; report; refer.* gratiam referre, *to show gratitude, to repay, requite.*

rěfĭcio, ěre, fēci, fectum, *to refit, repair.*

rě-fŭgĭo, ěre, fūgi, *to flee back.*

rěgĭo, ōnis, f., *a district, territory.* [rego.]

regno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be king, to reign.* [regnum.]

regnum, i, n., *kingly authority, sovereignty, chieftainship; a kingdom, the territory* of a king or chief. [rex.]

rěgo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to direct; to control, govern, rule.*

rě-grěďior, i, gressus, *to go back, retreat.*

rēiectus, a, um, part. reicio.

rē-ĭcĭo, ěre, reiēci, iectum, *to cast back, drive back.* [iacio.]

rělātus; a, um, part. refero.

rě-lēgātus, a, um, part. relēgo.

rě-lēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to send away, remove out of the way.*

rělictus, a, um, v. relinquo.

rělĭgĭo, ōnis, f., *reverence for the gods, religion*: in plur., *superstitious practices; matters of religion, scruples of conscience.*

rě-linquo, ěre, līqui, lictum, *to leave behind, to leave remaining*: pass., *to remain.*

rělĭquus, a, um, adj., *that is left, remaining;* in plur. as subst. **rělĭqui**, ōrum, m., *the others, the rest.* [relinquo.]

rěmăneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to stay, remain behind.*

rēmĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to row.*

rě-missus, a, um, part of remitto, *slack, less severe.*

rĕ-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send back, to slacken, remit, abate.*

rĕ-mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move back, withdraw.*

rēmus, i, m., *an oar.*

rēnō, (rhēno), ōnis, m., some take this to mean *a reindeer-skin*; it is at any rate *a fur pelisse* or *jacket*, made from the skin of an animal dressed with the hair on.

rĕ-pello, ĕre, reppŭli, rĕpulsum, *to drive back.*

rĕpente, adv., *suddenly.*

rĕpentīnus, a, um, adj., *sudden, unlooked-for.*

rĕ-pĕrĭo, īre, reppĕri, rĕpertum, *to find, meet with.* [pario.]

rĕpertus, a, um, part. reperio.

rĕ-pĕto, ĕre, īi or īvi, ītum, *to ask* or *apply again for; demand as a right.*

rĕ-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear back.*

rĕ-posco, ĕre, (no perf. or sup.), *to exact, require.*

re-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to blame, find fault with.*

rĕpulsus, a, um, part. repello.

rĕquiro, ĕre, quīsīvi or īi, quīsītum, *to demand.*

rēs, rei, f., *a thing, matter, fact, event,* etc. The exact meaning depends on the context, e.g. **res frumentaria**, *corn supply, provisions.*

rescīdi, see rescindo.

rescindo, ĕre, scīdi, scissum, *to break up.* [scindo, *to cleave.*]

rĕ-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to save up, reserve; halt.*

rĕ-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, *to oppose, withstand.*

rē-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to look back* or *behind one.*

rē-spondĕo, ēre, di, sum, *to answer, reply.*

responsum, i, n., *an answer.*

rēspublīca, reipublicae, f., *a commonwealth. State; the public weal.*

rē-stĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to set up again; to replace, restore, revive.* [statuo.]

rĕ-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold fast, keep, maintain, preserve.*

rĕ-vertor, i, versus, *to turn back, return, retire.*

rĕ-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to recall, summon to return, challenge.*

rex, rēgis, m., *a ruler* of a territory, *a king, chieftain.* [rego.]

rhēda, ae, f., *carriage, chariot.*

rīpă ae, f., *a bank of a river.*

rīvus, i, m., *a small stream of water, a brook.*

rŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to ask, beg, request.*

rūmor, ōris, m., *hearsay, unauthenticated report, rumor.*

rursus, adv., *back, back again, again.* [contr. fr. revorsus from revertor.]

S.

sacrāmentum, i, n., *oath, military oath, oath of allegiance.*

săcrĭfĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *a sacrifice.* [sacer, facio.]

saepe, adv., *frequently, often.*

saepenumero, v. saepe.

săgŭlum, i, n., dimin., *a small military cloak.* [sagum.]

saltus, ūs, m., (1) *a woodland pasture*; (2) *a mountain pass.*

sălus, ūtis, f., *safety.*

sancĭo, īre, xi, ctum, *to make sacred* or *inviolable* by a religious act; *to decree, establish, ordain.*

sanctus, a, um, part. sancio: as adj., of persons, *sacred, inviolable.*

sānus, a, um, adj., *moderate, reasonable.*

săpĭo, ĕre, īvi or ĭi, *to have sense* or *discernment.*

sarcio, īre, sarsi, sarsum, *to mend, repair.*

sătisfăcio, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; to make excuse, apologize.* [often written separately: satis, facio.]

saucĭus, a, um, adj., *wounded.*

scāla, ae, f., *a ladder, a scaling-ladder.* [for scandla, from scando, *to climb.*]

scĕlĕrātus, a, um, part. scelero: as adj., *bad, wicked, infamous*: in masc., subst., *a miscreant.*

scĕlĕro, āre, no perf., atum, *to pollute with crime.* [scelus.]

scindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *to cut, rend*: vallum, *to pull* or *tear down.*

scĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, *to know.*

scribo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write.*

scūtum, i, n., *a shield.*

sē, **sēsē**, pron. reflex. of both numbers (gen. sui, dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē or sēsē), *himself, herself, itself, themselves*: inter se, *with each other.*

sēcĭus, adv., comp. of sēcus, *otherwise:* nihilo secius, *nevertheless.*

sector, āri, ātus sum, intensive, *to pursue eagerly.* [sequor.]

sĕcundus, a, um, adj., (1) *the following* or *next to the first* in time or order, *the second*; (2) *favorable.* [sequor.]

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdēs, is, f., *a seat, dwelling-place, settlement.* [sedeo.]

sĕgĕs, ĕtis, f., *corn-field, standing grain, corn in the field, crop.*

sēmĭta, ae, f., *a path.*

semper, adv., *always, ever.*

sĕnātus, ūs., m., *the council of elders, the Senate.* [senex.]

sententĭa, ae, f., *a way of thinking, opinion.* [sentio.]

sentĭo, sentire, sensi, sum, *to perceive, notice, observe.*

septem, card. num. adj., *seven.*

septentrĭo, ōnis, almost always in the plural, *the seven stars of the Bear, the north.* [literally the seven ploughing oxen, septem triones.]

septĭmus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *seventh* [septem.]

septingenti, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred.* [septem centum.]

sĕquor, i, sĕcūtus, *to follow, attend.*

sermo, ōnis, m., *a talking, conversation.* [sero=*to join* words.]

sēro, adv., *too late.* [serus.]

sĕro, ĕre, sēvi, sătum, *to sow.*

servīlis, e, adj., *belonging to* or *of a slave.* [servus.]

servĭtūs, ūtis, f., *slavery.* [servus.]

servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to keep, lay up, preserve, beset.*

servus, i, m., *a slave, serf.*

sexāgintā, *sixty*

sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred.* [See centum.]

sē-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call apart, take aside.*

sī, conj., *if.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus.*

siccĭtas, ātis, f., *dryness* (of the weather), *drought.* [siccus.]

sīc-ut (sicut), adv., *as, just as.*

sīc-uti, (sīcŭti) = sicut.

sīdus, ĕris, n., *a constellation, a group of stars.*

signĭfĭcātĭo, ōnis, f., *a making of a sign* or *token*; *tidings.* [signum, facio.]

signum, i, n., *a military standard, ensign.*

silva, ae, f., *a wood, forest.*

silvestris, e, adj. *wooded, woodland* [silva.]

sĭmĭlis, e, adj., *like, like unto.*

sĭmŭl, adv., *at the same time, at once.*

sĭmŭlācrum, i, n., *an image.* [simulo = *to make like,* similis.]

sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, f., *pretence.*

simul atque, conj. adv., *as soon as.*

sĭmultās, ătis, f., *deceit.*

sīn, conj., *if however, but if.*

sĭne, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim, adv., *one by one, singly.* [singuli.]

singŭlāris, e, adj., (*alone of its kind,* hence) *singular, remarkable.* [singuli.]

singŭli, ae, a, distrib. num adj., *one to each, separate, singly.*

sĭnister, tra, trum, adj., *left hand, adverse.*

sĭnistrorsus, adv., *towards the left side, to the left.*

sĭtus, us, m., *position.* [sino.]

sīve (seu), conj. *whether* (=*either if*), sive (seu)....sive (seu), *whether....or.*

sociĕtās, ātis, f., *alliance, league.*

sŏcĭus, ĭi, m., *an ally.*

Sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun, the Sun-god.*

sŏlĕo, ēre, ĭtus sum, semi-dep., *to be accustomed, to be wont.*

sŏlĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *a lonely place, a desert, wilderness.* [solus.]

sollĭcĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try to win over, incite, instigate* for warlike purposes.

sollĭcĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *anxiety,*

sōlum, adv., *alone, only.*

sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone, only.*

solvo, ĕre, solvi, sŏlūtum, *to loose,* (naves), *to weigh anchor, set sail.*

spătĭum, ĭi, n., *a space, distance, interval.*

spĕcĭes, ēi, f., *outward appearance look, seeming:* in speciem, *for a show, seemingly.* [specio].

specto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to look at, look to, bear in mind*; *to look for,* i.e., *await, expect.* [specio.]

spĕcŭlātor, ōris, m., *a scout, explorer.*

spēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hope, expect.*

spes, spĕi, f., *hope.*

spŏlio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to rob, despoil, strip off.*

sponte, abl. f, no other case found but a (rare) gen. spontis: in expressions, sponte meâ, tuâ, suâ. *of free will, of one's own accord.* [spondeo.]

stătim, adv., *on the spot*, i.e., *at once, forthwith, straight-way, immediately.* [sto.]

stătio, ōnis, f., *an outpost, a roadstead.*

stătūra, ae, f., *height* or *size* of the body, *stature.* [sto.]

stătus, ūs, m., *condition, position, circumstances.* [sto.]

stīpendĭum, ĭi, n., *a tax, tribute; soldier's pay.* [stips, pendo.]

stirps, is, f., *stem, stock, race.*

sto, āre, stĕti, stātum, *to stand; to abide, adhere to.*

strāmentum, i, n., *straw:* casae stramentis tectae, *thatched.* [sterno.]

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter.*

stŭdĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to take pains about, devote oneself to.*

stŭdĭōsē, adv., *eagerly, carefully, with much pains.* [stu-diosus, studium.]

stŭdĭum, ĭi, n., *study, devotion to:* studia rei militaris, *military pursuits.* [studeo.]

sŭb, prep. w. acc. or abl., *under.*

sub-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to draw up.*

subductĭo, ōnis, f., *the hauling ashore of a ship.* [sub, duco.]

subĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to enter, undergo.*

sub-iectus, a, um, part. of subicio, *lying beneath.*

sŭb-ĭcio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to place beneath.*

sŭbĭto, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.* [sub, eo.]

sublātus, a, um, part. tollo.

sub-lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise up, support.*

sub-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send up,* (reinforcements).

submŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move out of the way, move on, repulse.*

subruo, ĕre, rŭi, rŭtum, *to undermine.*

sub-sĕquor, i, cūtus, *to follow close after.*

subsĭdĭum, ĭi, n., *aid, relief, reinforcement, support.* [sub-sideo.]

sub-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, *to stand still, to hold out, hold fast.*

sub-sum, no perf., esse, *to be close at hand.*

sub-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come to one's aid, to succour.*

suc-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come into the place of, succeed.* [sub.]

suc-cendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to set on fire from below*; in gen., *to set alight, set on fire.*

suc-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cisum, *to cut down.*

suc-cīsus. See succido.

suc-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run* or *hasten to the aid* or *help* of anyone.

sŭdis (nom. sing. rare), is, f., *a stake.*

suffrāgĭum, ĭi, n., *a vote.*

suggestus, ūs, m., *a raised place, mound, platform* for speaking.

sum, esse, fui, v. subst., *to be.*

summa, ae, f., *the whole*; summa imperii, *supreme command.*

summus, a, um, superl. adj., f. superus, *the top of.*

sum-mitto, (subm.), ĕre, mīsī, missum, *to send up, send off, despatch.*

sumptŭōsus, a, um, adj., *costly, expensive.* [sumptus.]

sūmo, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take*; **poenas sumere**, *to take satisfaction, exact the penalty, inflict punishment.*

sŭpĕrĭor, ĭus, comp. adj. See superus.

sŭpĕro, āre, āvi. ātum, *to overcome, conquer, prevail.* [super.]

sŭper-sum, esse, fui, *to be over* (as a remainder), *to be left, remain, survive.*

sŭpĕrus, a, um, adj., *that is above, upper*: comp. **sŭpĕrior**, ĭus. of time, *former, past, previous*; of strength in a battle or other contest, *superior, stronger, victorious*: sup. **sŭprēmus** and **summus**, of rank, etc., *highest, most distinguished*: **summae res**, *things of the highest importance.* [super.]

supplĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *punishment*, (of death), *execution.* [supplex, sup-plico = *to bend the knees, kneel down* (for execution, etc.).]

sŭprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., *above; of time, before.* [superus.]

suscĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to undertake.*

suspectus, a, um, part. suspicio.

suspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, ctum, *to mistrust, suspect.* [sub-specio.]

suspīcĭo, ōnis, f., *mistrust, suspicion.*

suspĭcor, ari, atus sum, *to suspect.*

sustento, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to bear, endure, support.* [sustineo.]

sustĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnui, tentum, *to hold up* or *out against, to withstand.* [subs= sub, teneo.]

sustŭli, v. tollo.

sŭus, a, um, pron. poss. of 3rd person, *his own, her own, its own, their own*; *his, her, its, their.*

T.

tabernāculum, i, n., *a tent.*

tabulātum, i, n., *a floor, storey* (of a tower or house).

tālĕa, ae, *bar, rod* (of iron.)

tālis, e, adj., *of such a kind*; *such* (referring to quality always).

tămen, adv., *however, nevertheless, yet.*

tămetsi, conj., *notwithstanding that, although.* [contr. fr. tamen etsi.]

tango, ĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactum, *to touch.*

tanto, see tantus.

tantŭlus, a, um, adj., dim., so *little, so small.* [tantus.]

tantus, a, um, adj., *so great* in amount, size, etc.: subst. **tantum**, i, n., *so much:* abl. tanto (with comparatives), *by so much, so much the, the* (cf. quantus).

tantum, adv., *only.*

tardo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to impede, retard.*

taurus, i, m., *a bull.*

taxus, i, f., *a yew-tree.*

tectus, a, um, part. tego.

tĕgĭmentum, i, n., *a covering.* [tego.]

tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to cover.*

tēlum, i, n., *a weapon for throwing, a javelin*, etc.

tĕmĕrārĭus, a, um, adj., *rash, inconsiderate.* [temere.]

tĕmĕrē, adv., *at random, rashly, heedlessly.*

téměrĭtas, ātis, f., *rashness, indiscretion.* [temere.]

tempĕrātus, a, um, part. of tempero. *temperate.*

tempestas, ātis, f., *season of the year; storm.*

tempto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to try, tempt.*

tempus, ŏris, n., *time.*

tĕnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold, keep.*

tento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try, test, tempt, try to influence, endeavor.*

tĕnŭis, e, adj., (*thin*); *feeble, weak.*

terra, ae, f., *the* (dry) *land; the earth*; plur. terrae, *the earth, the world.*

terrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to frighten.*

terrĭto, are (no perf. or sup.) freq., *to put in terror, to frighten.* [terreo.]

terrŏr, ōris, in., *fright, alarm.*

tertĭus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the third.* [ter.]

tertĭus-dĕcĭmus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the thirteenth.*

testĭmōnĭum, ĭi, n., *evidence, proof.* [testor.]

testūdo, ĭnis, f., *a tortoise.* As a military term, the word means *a covering* or *shed* for the protection of soldiers attacking fortifications. [testa=*a shell.*]

tĭmĕo, ēre, ŭi, (no sup.) *to dread, fear.*

tĭmĭde, adv., *faint-heartedly, timidly.* [timidus, timeo.]

tĭmor, ōris, m., *dread, fear.* [timeo.]

tŏlĕro, are, avi, atum, *to bear, endure, sustain.*

tollo, tollĕre, sustŭli, sublātum, *to raise, lift*, or *set up; to take away, remove.*

tormentum, i, n., *torture.* [torqueo, *to twist.*]

torrĕo, ēre, torrŭi, tostum, *to scorch.*

tŏt, num. adj. indecl., *so many.*

tōtus, a, um (gen. ĭus, dat. i), adj., *the whole, entire, all.*

tractus, v. traho.

trādo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give* or *hand over; to deliver* by teaching, *to teach.* [trans, do.]

trādūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead* or *bring across* or *over.* [trans, duco.]

trāgŭla, ae, f., *a kind of javelin* or *lance* used by the Gauls. [traho.]

traho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *to draw, drag along.*

trāĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to pierce through, transfix.* [trans, iacio.]

tranquillĭtās, ātis, f., *calm.*

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over, on the far side of.*

transduco. See traduco.

trans-ĕo, ĭre, ĭvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go across* or *over, to cross.*

trans-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear across, to bring* or *carry over.*

trans-fīgo, ĕre, xi, xum, *to pierce through, transfix.*

transĭtus, ūs, m., *a going* or *passing over, a passage, crossing.* [transeo.]

translātus, a, um, part. transfero.

trans-mărīnus, a, um, adj., *brought across* or *from beyond sea, imported.*

transmissus, ūs, m., *crossing, interval, distance.*

transporto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey across.*

trecenti, ae, a, adj., *three hundred.*

trĕpĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bustle about anxiously, to hurry with alarm.*

trēs, trĭa, card. num. adj., *three.*

tribunus, i, m., *a chieftain, commander, tribune*; **tribuni militum**, *military tribunes*, officers of the army, six to each legion, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time.

trĭbuo, ĕre, trĭbŭi, trĭbūtum, *to assign.*

trĭbūtum, i, n., *a stated payment, tribute.*

trīni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib., *three at a time*; *in groups of three.* [tres.]

trĭpertīto, adv., *in three divisions.* [tres, pars.]

trĭquĕtrus, tra, trum, adj., *triangular.*

tŭĕor, ēri, tūtus, *to see to, defend, protect.*

tum, adv., *then.*

tŭmultus, us, m., *commotion, disturbance.*

tŭmŭlus, i, m., *a mound.* [tumeo = *to swell.*]

turma, ae, f., *a squadron.*

turpis, e, adj., *base, shameful, dishonorable.*

turris, is (acc. turrim and turrem; abl. turri and turre), f., *a tower.*

tūtus, a, um, part. tueor. As adj., *safe.*

U.

ŭbĭ, adv., (of place), *where*; (of time), *when.*

ulciscor, i, ultus, *to take vengeance on, avenge oneself on.*

ullus, a, um, adj., *any, any at all.* [for unulus, dimin. of unus.]

ultĕrĭor, ius, comp. adj., *farther.*

ultĭmus, a, um, sup. adj., *farthest, most distant*: **ultĭmi**, ōrum, m., *the hindmost.*

ultro, adv., *unasked*; *unprovoked*; *of one's own accord.*

ultus, v. ulciscor.

ŭlŭlātus, us, m., *a yell, war-whoop.*

ūnā, adv., *together, in company.* [unus.]

undĕ, adv., *from which place, whence.*

undĭquĕ, adv., *from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides.*

unĭversus, a, um, adj., *all together, in a body, as a whole. whole.*

ūnus, a, um, card. num. adj., *one*: ad unum, *to a man*, i. e., *without exception.*

urbs, is, f., *city.*

urus, i, m., *a wild-ox, aurochs.*

usqŭe, adv., *all the way*: usque ad, *right up to.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, employment*; *need, occasion*; *usefulness, use*: ex usu esse, *to be useful* or *advantageous.* [utor.]

ūsus, a, um, part. utor.

ŭt or **ŭti**, adv. and conj., with indic., *as*; with subjunctive, *that, so that, in order that.*

ŭter, ŭtra, ŭtrum, pron. interrog., *which, of the two.*

ŭter-que, ŭtrăque, ŭtrumque, pron., *each of two, both* (separately; opp. to ambo, *both together*).

ŭtĭ, conj. See ut.

ūti, infin. of ūtor.

ūtor, i, ūsus sum, *to use, accept, enjoy.*

uxor, ōris f., *a wife.*

V.

văcātĭo, ōnis, f., *freedom, exemption* from a service, etc. [vaco.]

vădum, i, n., *a ford.*

vāgīna, ae, f., *a scabbard, sheath.*

văgor, āri, ātus, *to go to and fro, roam, wander.* [vagus.]

vălĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to be strong*: *to to have power* or *influence, to avail.*

valles or **vallis**, is, f., *a vale, valley.*

vallum, i, n., *an earthen wall* or *rampart set with palisades, a rampart.*

vărĭĕtās, ātis, f., *diversity, variety.*

vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to empty of inhabitants, to lay waste.* [vastus.]

vectīgal, ālis, n., *tax.* [veho.]

vectōrius, a, um, adj., *for transport.* [veho.]

velim and **vellem**, see volo.

vēlōcĭtās, ātis, f., *speed*, *swiftness*. [velox.]

vēlōcĭter, adv., *speedily*, *swiftly*; comp. **velocius**; sup. **velocissime**. [velox.]

vēnātĭo, ōnis, f., *hunting*, *the chase*. [venor.]

vēnātor, ōris, m., *a hunter*. [venor.]

vĕnia, ae, f., *pardon*, *favor*, *indulgence*.

vĕnĭo, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come*.

ventĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to come often*, *to keep coming*. [venio.]

ventus, i, m., *wind*.

vēr, vēris, n., *spring*.

verbum, i, n., *a word*.

vĕrĕor, ēri, ĭtus, *to fear* or *be afraid*.

vergo, vergĕre, *to incline*, *turn*, *verge*.

vĕrĭtus, a, um, part. vereor.

vērō, adv., *in truth*, *assuredly*, *however*. [verus.]

versor, āri, ātus, (properly the mid. form of verso, are, freq. of verto), *stay*, *dwell*, *be* in a place, or *mix among* or *with people*.

versus, ūs, m., *a line* of poetry, *a verse*.

versus, ad. *towards*, *in the direction of*.

vĕrūtum, i, n., *a dart*, *javelin*. [veru, *a spit*.]

vesper, ĕris, (locative vesperi, acc. mostly vesperum), m., *the evening*.

vestīgĭum,, ii, n., *a footprint*, *track*, *trace*.

vestio, īre, vestīvi, vestītum, *to clothe*. [vestis.]

vestītus. See vestio.

vĕto, āre, vetŭi, vĕtĭtum, *to forbid*.

vĕtus, ĕris, adj., *old*.

vexillum, i, n., *a flag*; a red flag placed upon the general's tent as a signal for battle or marching.

vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harass*, *ravage*.

vĭa, ae, f., *a way*, *street*, *road*.

vīcēni, ae, a, num., distrib. adj., *twenty each*. [viginti.]

vĭcēsĭmus (vicessimus and vigesimus), a, um, num. ord. adj., *the twentieth*. [viginti.]

vĭcĭes, adv., *twenty times*. [viginti.]

victĭma, ae, f., *a sacrifice*, *victim*.

victor, ōris, m., *a conqueror*; in apposition, *victorious*. [vinco.]

victōrĭa, ae, f., *victory*.

victus, a, um, part. vinco.

victus, ūs, m. (*that on which one lives*), *provisions*, *sustenance*, *victuals*. [vivo.]

vīcus, i, m.. *village*.

vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *to see*; pass. videor, *I seem* or *am seen*; impers. pass., *to seem fit* or *good*.

viginti, adj., indecl., *twenty*.

vīmen, ĭnis, n., *a pliant twig*, *withe*, *osier*.

vinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *to conquer*, *be victorious*: **vincite**=*have your own way*.

vĭŏlo, āre, avi, atum, *to do violence to*, *injure*. [vis.]

vĭr, vĭri, m., *a man*, *a husband*

vīres, v. vis.

virgo, inis, f., *a maiden*.

virtūs, ūtis, f., *manliness*; *bravery*, *courage*, *valor*; *worth*, *virtue*. [vir.]

vīs, acc. vim, abl. vi. f. in sing., *violence*, *force*, *power*; plur. vires, virium, etc., *bodily strength*.

vīta, ae, f., *life*. [vivo.]

vīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to avoid*, *evade*.

vitrum. i, n., *woad*.

vīvo, ĕre, vixi, victum, *to live*.

vīvus, a, um, adj., *alive*, *living*. [vivo.]

vobis, see vos.

vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call*, *invite*, *challenge*.

vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭi, *to wish*, *will*, *be willing*.

vŏluntārĭus, a, um, adj., *willing*, *of one's own free will*: **voluntarii**, ōrum, m., *volunteers*. [voluntas.]

vŏluntās, ātis, f., *will*, *free-will*, *inclination*, *disposition*.

vŏluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure*.

vōs, plur. of **tu**, pron. pers., *you*.

vŏvĕo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *to vow*, *to promise solemnly*.

vox, vōcis, f., *a voice*, *cry*.

vulgo, adv., *commonly*, *generally*. [vulgus.]

vulgus, i, (usually n., occasionally m., but not in Caesar) *the mass of the people*, *the people*, *the public*.

vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wound*, *injure* by a wound. [vulnus.]

vulnus, ĕris, n., *a wound*.

EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION

BASED ON BOOK V.

N.B.—The first five Exercises are based on Chapter 1.

Exercise 1.

Cases.

1. Lucius and Appius are consuls ; Lucius is consul.

2. Lucius (being) consul, Caesar sets out for hither Gaul.

3. In the consulship of Lucius and Appius, Caesar set out (Historical Pres.) from the army (*exercitus*, *-ūs*) into Italy.

4. He puts Labienus, Titurius (and) Cotta, (his) lieutenants in-charge-of the army.

5. To these lieutenants he-gives-orders (*impero*) that they should build (*facere*) a fleet (*classis*).

6. They will build ships and repair the old (ones).

7. These ships Caesar will use against (*contra*) Britain (*Britannia*).

8. They make the ships low and broad.

9. The Romans use in the Mediterranean high and narrow ships.

10. In the Ocean the Gauls use lower and wider vessels than (those) which the Romans are accustomed to employ.

11. Many things were useful to the lieutenants.

Exercise 2.

Abl. Absol.

1. Caesar left (*discedo*) for Britain, when Pompeius and Crassus were consuls.

2. The assizes have been held ; I will now (*iam*) set out for Italy.

3. After holding the assizes, Caesar returns (*revertor*, 3) to the army.

4. Part of the province had been laid waste by the Gauls. This part having been devastated, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.

5. These things were reported. These (rel. pron.) things having been reported to Caesar, he ordered (*impero*) hostages.

6. He gave-orders-to the Gauls (for) many hostages.

7. These speeches were delivered (*habeo*). When these speeches had been delivered (part. phrase), Caesar replied (*respondeo, -di*).

Exercise 3.

Acc. with Inf.—Tenses of the Inf.

1. The province was being ravaged. He kept-hearing that the province was being ravaged.

2. Part has already (*iam*) been devastated by the enemy. They heard (perf.) that this part had already been laid waste by the soldiers of the enemy.

3. Caesar will pursue them with war. Caesar made-clear that he would pursue them with war and ravage their lands.

4. They heard (from time to time) that Caesar was coming (*venio*, 4) that his lieutenants had built ships and that he would demand hostages.

5. Caesar believed (*credo, credidi*) that the Pirustae had done all these things (neut. pl.) as a matter of public policy.

6. He learned (*cognosco, cognovi*) that they were ready to give satisfaction.

7. Caesar said that he would, after hostages were sent (abl. abs.), appoint (=give) assessors.

Exercise 4.

Iubeo and Impero.

1. He ordered them to build ships and repair the old ones (use *iubeo*).

2. He gives orders to Labienus, Titurius (and) Cotta that they build ships and repair the old ones.

3. He orders ships to be built (use (a) *iubeo* (b) *impero*; with *impero* use either *ut* or *inf.*)*

4. He orders hostages from the Pirustae (use *impero*. and dat. of person receiving the order).

5. He bids them bring the hostages to himself.

Sequence of Tenses.

6. It was Caesar's custom to order (express by proper tense of *impero*.) conquered (*victus, -a, -um*) states to give hostages.

7. He had ordered that these should be brought to him.

8. The lieutenants gave orders (historical present) to the men (*miles*) to build the ships low and broad.

9. He will give orders for the repairing of the ships (="that the ships be repaired").

---

* *Impero* may take the infin. in passive.

10. He has given orders for the old ships to be repaired and new ones to be constructed by the soldiers over-whom he has placed the lieutenants.

11. Bid the man come. Command the man to come.

Exercise 5.

Gerund and Gerundive.

1. Great was the speed of loading these vessels.

2. They were low for-the-purpose-of (*ad*) loading.

3. The cause of building (them) was this. Caesar wished to cross (*transire*) to Britain.

4. What things (n. pl.) were required (*usui esse*) for building the ships (Gerundive), were brought from Spain.

5. Many things are necessary (*usui*) for repairing a fleet.

6. He bids the lieutenants see-to (*curo*) the equipping of a fleet.

7. Caesar bids the ambassadors see that hostages are brought.

8. A fleet was fitted out for the sake of crossing to Britain (use *causā* after its case).

9. He goes to Gaul to hold the assizes (*conventus agere;* use *ad* and Gerundive).

Exercise 6.

Review.

These ships having been built and equipped and the assizes being over, he returns (*revertor*) to the army. When he had arrived there he found (*invenio*) XXVIII war ships (*naves longae*) built (*instruo, instructum*) and six hundred others fitted out. Having praised the soldiers (use passive partl.) he ordered all to assemble at (*convenire ad*) the ocean, because he had learnt (*cognosco, -novi*) that there was a short (*brevis*) passage (*traiectus*) to Britain. He himself with four legions sets out for the Treveri because he had heard that they were not coming to the councils (*concilium*).

Exercise 7.

(See Chapter 1 and 2).

In the following year, when Lucius and Appius were consuls, Caesar prepared again to cross to Britain. In the winter he ordered his lieutenants to see that a fleet (*classis*) was built and fitted out (*armo*). After holding the assizes he sets out to the Pirustae because he heard they were laying waste that part of the Roman Province which bordered on (*attingo*) Illyricum. Having received the submission of the Pirustae (*the P. having been received into surrender*) and having appointed (*do, dare*) assessors among them, he returns to the coast (*ora maritima*) where (*ubi*) he finds many ships built and old ones repaired.

Exercise 8.

(See Chapter 2, 3 and 4).

Having ordered all the ships to assemble at Portus Itius, he leads four legions against the Treveri, who were defying his authority (*imperio non parēre*) and stirring up the Germans. Of this state there were two chiefs, Indutiomarus and Cingetorix. One of these, learning of Caesar's approach, surrenders to Caesar, and is received as a friend (*into friendship*). The other, Indutiomarus, at first (*primo*) endeavored to resist (Dative) Caesar, gathering (*perf. pass. participle*) all his (people) into the woods. But being frightened by Caesar's arrival, he offered to surrender unconditionally, (*said he was willing to entrust himself and his fortunes to his honor* (*fides*). Nevertheless Caesar, after receiving hostages from Indutiomarus, made Cingetorix head of the Treveri (*conciliated the chiefs of the T. to C.*); at which the former (*ille*) was very indignant (*bore grievously*).

Exercise 9.

1. The chieftains of the Treveri were not able to consult the interests of their states, so (*itaque*) looked out for themselves.

2. It was of great interest to Caesar that a friend should rule over (*impero*, with Dat.) the Treveri.

3. Indutiomarus feared that all would desert him (=himself).

4. Caesar feared that Indutiomarus would not be a friend (see F. 185, 3, 4; P. II., 154).

5. Indutiomarus did not come to Caesar, in order that the state might be the more easily kept loyal (*in officio*).

6. What (*plur.*) is going on among the Treveri? Cingetorix will make known (*ostendo*) to Caesar what is going on.

7. I and all my (people) will be loyal, nor will we desert (*deficio ab*) the friendship of the Roman people.

Exercise 10.

(See latter part of Chapter 3).

It-is-for-that-reason-that I am not leaving my friends and am unwilling to come to you. I wish to maintain the loyalty of my state and I fear lest the common people may slip. Consequently the state is at my disposal and I will, if you permit me (fut. indic), come to you in your camp and put myself and my state in your hands (*entrust myself to your honor*).

Exercise 11.

(See Chapter 5).

1. Caesar's legions had reached the harbor.

2. Fifty war-ships built in the territories of the Meldae, had been driven back by storms and had not (*neque*) been able to reach this harbor. They returned to their starting point.

obses, ĭdis, m. or f., *a hostage.* [obsideo.]

obsessĭo, ōnis, f., *a siege*; *blockade.*

ob-sĭdĕo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *sit down at* or *before*; *to beset, besiege.* [ob, sedeo.]

obsĭdĭo, ōnis, f., *a siege, blockade.* [ob, sideo.]

obstĭnāte, adv., *stubbornly.*

obstrŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to build* or *wall up, barricade.*

ob-tĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnŭi, tentum, *to have, hold, possess.* [ob, teneo.]

occāsĭo, ōnis, f., *an opportunity.* [ob. cădo.]

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting,* (occasus solis, *setting of the Sun*). [ob, cado.]

occĭdens, entis, m., *the west.* [occido.]

occīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *to kill, slay.* [ob. caedo.]

occultātiŏ, onis, f., *concealment.*

occulto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to conceal, hide, secrete.* [occulo.]

occultus, a, um, part. occulo; as adj., *concealed, hidden, secret.*

occŭpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take possession of, seize upon, engage in.* [ob. capio.]

oc-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run up to, come up to, meet.*

octingenti, ae, a, num, adj., *eight hundred.* [octo centum.]

octo, card. num., adj., *eight.*

oculus, i, m.. *eye.*

odium, i, n., *hatred.*

offendo, ere, fendi, fensum, *to injure.*

offĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *duty, service, allegiance.*

omitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to neglect, disregard, drop, omit.*

omnīno, adv., *altogether, at all.* [omnis.]

omnis, e, adj., *all, every.*

ŏnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to load, burden, freight.* [onus.]

ŏpĕra, ae, f., *agency, means; aid, services.* [opus.]

ŏpīnĭo, ōnis, f., *belief, expectation.* [opinor.]

ŏpis, (gen.; nom. not found), *power*; *aid, assistance*; opes plur. *resources.*

oppidum, i, n., *town.*

oppōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, to *confront, place opposite.*

opportunitas, ātis, f., *opportunity, fitness.*

opportūnus, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable.* [ob, portus=*at* or *before the harbour.*]

opprĭmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to crush, overwhelm, oppress*; *to fall upon, take by surprise.* [ob, prĕmo.]

oppugnātĭo, ōnis, f., *an attack, assault.* [oppugno.]

oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to attack, assault, storm.*

ŏpus, ĕris, n., *work*; *work of fortification, "defences"*; *need, necessity*; hence, as predicate with nom., *needful, requisite.*

ōrātĭo, ōnis, f., *a speech, harangue.* [ora.]

orbis, is, m., *a circle, ring.*

ordo, ĭnis, m., *a line, rank of soldiers*; used by Caesar=centuria, *century, company.*

ŏriens, entis, m., *the east.* [orior.]

ŏrior, īri, ortus, *to arise.*

ōro, are, avi, atum, *to beg, beseech, entreat, implore*

ōs, ōris, n, *the mouth.*

ostendo, ĕre, di, sum and tum, *to show*; se, *make their appearance.*

ostento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to display, show off, boast of, vaunt.* [ostendo.]

P.

pābŭlor, ari, ātus sum, *to forage.* [pabulum.]

pābŭlātor, ōris, m., *a forager.* [pabulor.]

pācātus, a, um, part. (of paco, *to make peaceful* [pax]). as adj., *peaceful.*

pāco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to quiet, reduce to state of peace.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

pāgus, i, m, *a canton, district, village* (hence our word *pagan*).

pălam, adv., *openly, undisguisedly.*

palma, ae, f., *the palm of the hand, the blade of an oar.*

pălūs, ūdis, f., *a marsh, morass, swamp.*

pār, păris, adj., *equal.*

parco, ĕre, pĕperci, parsum, *to spare, have mercy on.*

părens, entis, m. and f., *a parent.* [pario.]

pārĕo, ēre, ŭi, pārĭtum, *to obey, submit to.*

părĭo, ĕre, pĕpĕri, partum, *to bring forth* (hence), *to produce, bring about, secure.*

păro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get* or *make ready, prepare.*

pars, partis, f., *a part, portion*: in utramque partem, *on both sides, either way, upon either view of the case.*

partim, adv., *in part, partly.* [pars.]

partus, a, um, part. pario.

parvŭlus, a, um, adj., dim., *little, petty, trifling*; of age, *little, young.* [parvus.]

passus, ūs, m., *a step, pace*; as a measure of length, about five of our feet, *i.e.*, a double pace: mille passuum, *a* (Roman) *mile*=about 1,618 yards; *V.* note, B. v., chap. 2.

pătĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to lie open; to stretch, extend.*

păter, tris, m., *a father.*

păterfămilĭae (or familias), m., *the master of a household, head of a family.*

pătĭentĭa, ae, f., *endurance.* [patior.]

pătĭor, i., passus, *to suffer, allow.*

paucĭtas, ātis, f., *fewness, scarcity.* [paucus.]

paucus, a, um, adj., *few, little* (very rare in sing.); as subst., **pauci**, ōrum, m., *few, a few.*

paulātim, adv., *little by little, by degrees, gradually.* [paulum.]

paulisper, adv., *for a little while.* [paulum.]

paulo, adv. (with comparatives), *by a little, a little, somewhat.*

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

pax, pācis, f., *peace.* [The root of the word is seen in paciscor, pango, whence our *pact, compact.*]

pĕcūnĭa, ae, f., *money.* [pecus, because, in early times, *wealth* was *cattle.*]

pĕcus, ŏris, n., *a flock, herd, cattle.*

pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier.*

pĕdĭtātus, us, m., *foot-soldiers, ininfantry.* [pedes, pes.]

pellis, is, f., *a hide, skin.*

pendo, ĕre, pĕpendi, pensum, *to weigh out*; (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal; hence) *to pay.*

per, prep, w. acc., *through*; showing the agent or means, *by, by means of.*

pĕr-ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to go through with, complete, finish.*

perceptus, v. percipio.

percĭpĭo, ĕre, cepi, ceptum, *to take note of, receive, learn.*

percontātĭo, ōnis, f., *question, inquiry.* [percontor.]

percussus, a, um., part., percutio.

per-cŭtĭo, ĕre, cussi, cussum, *to pierce* or *strike through.* [quatio.]

per-disco, ĕre, dĭdĭci, *to learn thoroughly, get off by heart.*

per-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead through*; *to prolong*; *to bring* or *win* (any one) *over to one's side*; *carry over.*

pĕrendĭnus, a, um, adj., *after tomorrow.* [perendie.]

pĕrĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to perish.*

pĕr-exĭgŭus, a, um., adj., *very small.*

per-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear* or *carry through*; *to bring*; *to bear, put up with, submit to*; in pass., of letters, news, etc., *to arrive, come to hand.*

per-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to accomplish, complete, finish.* [per-facio.]

perfŭga, ae, m., *deserter, fugitive.*

perīclitor, ari, atus sum, *to endanger.*

pĕrīcŭlum, i, n., *danger.*

perlātus, a, um, part. perfero.

perlectus, a, um, part. perlego.

per-lĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to read through.*

perlŭo, ĕre, lŭi, lūtum, *to wash*; in pass, *to bathe (one self).*

per-mănĕo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to abide, continue, remain.*

per-mitto, mittĕre, mīsi, missum, *entrust, surrender, suffer, permit.*

permōtus, a, um, part. permoveo.

per-mŏvĕo, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move thoroughly*; of the mind, *to move deeply, influence, prevail on.*

perpauci, ae, a, adj., *very few.*

per-pĕtŭus, a, um, adj., *continuing throughout, unbroken*: in perpetuum, *for all time, for ever.* [per-peto.]

per-rumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break through.*

per-scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write in full, write a full account of.*

per-sĕquor, sĕqui, sĕcūtus, *to follow up, pursue.*

persĕvēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to abide steadfastly, persist.*

perspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to look through*; *to see clearly, perceive.*

per-suādĕo, ēre, si, sum, *to persuade, prevail upon.*

perterreo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to terrify*; *thoroughly frighten.*

per-terrĭtus, a, um, part. of perterreo, *thoroughly frightened.*

pertĭnācĭa, ae, f., *obstinacy.* [pertinax, tenax, teneo.]

per-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to stretch out, reach, extend; to belong to, concern, affect.* [teneo.]

per-turbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to throw into confusion; to discompose, confound.*

per-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come to, arrive at.*

pēs, pĕdis, m., *a foot.*

pĕto, īvi, and ĭi, ītum, *to seek; ask.*

pĭĕtas, ātis, f., *dutiful conduct* towards the gods, one's parents, country, etc. [pius.]

pīlum, i, n., *a javelin.*

pilus, i, m., usually with primus, *the division of the army occupied by the triarii;* **primi pili centurio**, *a centurion of the triarii.*

pinna, ae, f., *a battlement.*

plăcĭde, adv., *calmly.*

plāco, are, avi, atum, *to reconcile, appease.*

plānē, adv., *clearly.*

plebs, bis, and plēbes, ĕi, f., *the common people, "the masses"* (opp. to the nobles).

plērumque, adv., *for the most part, mostly.*

plērusque, răque, rumque, adj., (rare in sing.); plerīque, plur., *very many, the most part, the majority.*

plumbum, i. m., *lead;* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrĭmum, adv., *most, very much:* ei debere, *to be very greatly indebted to, under very great obligations to*

plūs, plūris (in plur., plūres, plūra,) *more,* and plūrimus, a, um, *most,* adj., comp. and sup. of multus. (N. B., the sing. plus is generally a neut. subst. or an adv.)

pōcŭlum, i. n., *a cup, a drinking-vessel.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*

pollĭcĕor, ēri, ĭtus, *to promise.*

pollĭcĭtātĭo, ōnis, f., *a promise.*

pondus, ĕris, n., *a weight.* [pendo.]

pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put, to place;* in pass., *to rest* on, *depend* on anything.

pons, ntis, m., *a bridge.*

pŏpŭlor, āri, ātus, *to lay waste, ravage.* [pŏpŭlus.]

pŏpŭlus, i, m., *a people, the people; a district,* with reference to its inhabitants; *a community;* **Populus Romanus**, *the Roman people,* never plur.

porro, adv., *furthermore, now.*

porta, ae, f., *a gate.*

porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear* or *carry along.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

positus, v. pono.

possessĭo, ōnis, f., *a possession, a property.*

possum, posse, pŏtŭi, *to be able; I (thou,* etc.) *can.* [potis, sum.]

post, prep. w. acc. and adv., *after.*

post-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to postpone, put off.*

postĕā, adv., *after this* or *that, afterwards.*

postĕāquam, adv., *after that.*

postĕrus, a, um, adj., *coming after, following, next.* [post.]

postquam, conj., *after.*

postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally.* [postremus, sup of posterus.]

postŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to demand.*

pŏtens, tis, part of possum; as adj. *powerful.*

pŏtentia, ae, f., *power.* (See note, vi. 12, [potens.])

pŏtestas ātis, f., *power; opportunity.* [possum.]

potior, potīri, potītus sum, *to become master of; gain possession of;* governs abl.

potius, adv., *rather.*

praebĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to show, present.*

praeceptum, i, n., *instruction, command, injunction.*

praeceptus, a, um, part. praecipio.

prae-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to bid direct, order.* [capio.]

praecĭpŭus, a, um, adj., *special.* [praecipio.]

praeclūdo, ĕre, cludi, clusum, *to hinder, stop, close.*

prae-clūsus. See praecludo.

praeco, ōnis, m., *a crier, herald.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty.*

prae-dĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to proclaim, assert, taunt.*

prae-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lătum, *to carry in front, to place* a person or thing *before* another in esteem or reputation, *to prefer.*

prae-fĭcĭo, fĭcĕre, fēci, fectum, *to place in front* or *at the head of, to appoint to the command of.* [prae, facio.

prae-missus, a, um, part. of praemitto, *sent on beforehand.*

praemitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send before, send in advance.*

praemĭum, ĭi, n., *a reward.* [prae, emo.]

prae-occupo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to occupy beforehand.*

prae-păro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prepare.*

praepōno, ponĕre, posui, positum, *to set anyone in command over.*

praeruptus, a, um, adj., *steep, precipitous.*

praesens, tis, adj., *that is before one, at hand, present.* [prae, sum.]

praesentĭa, ae, f., *presence, the present time*: in praesentiā, *at hand, on the spot.*

prae-sentĭo, sentire, sensi, sensum, *to perceive beforehand.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesĭdĭum, ĭi, n., *protection, help.* [prae, sedeo.]

praesto, adv., *at hand*: praesto esse, *to present oneself.*

praesto, āre, stĭti, stĭtum and statum, *to discharge, fulfil.* **pr. fidem,** *keep one's word.*

prae-sum, esse, fŭi, *to be at the head of, in command of.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *except.*

praetĕrĕā, adv., *besides.*

prae-ūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *to burn at the point.*

praeustus, a, um, part. praeuro.

precem, preci, prece, defective noun; *prayer, entreaty.*

prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to press, press upon, oppress.*

prīdĭē, adv., *on the day before.*

prīmo, adv., *in the first place.*

prīmum, adv., *in the first place;* quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, a, um, adj. sup., *the first, first.*

princeps, ĭpis, adj., *first, chief;* as subst., comm., *a chief, chieftain.* [primus, capio.]

princĭpātus, ūs, m., *the first place, supremacy, chieftainship.* [princeps.]

pristinus, a, um, adj., *former, old, old-fashioned.*

prĭus, foll. by quam, and, as one word, **priusquam**, adv. comp., *sooner than, before, before that.*

prīvātim, adv., *as an individual, privately.*

prīvātus, a, um, part. privo, *to deprive*; as adj., *belonging to an individual, private.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of.*

prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prove, demonstrate*; *to approve.*

prō-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go forth, to advance.*

prŏcŭl, adv., *in the distance, from afar.* [procello, *to drive* away.]

prō-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbŭi, cŭbĭtum, *to sink down to the ground.*

prō-cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take care of, look after.*

prō-curro, ĕre, cŭcurri and curri, cursum, *to run forth, rush forward.*

prōdĕo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum, *to come* or *go forth.* [pro, eo.]

prōdĭtor, ōris, m., *a betrayer, traitor.* [prodo.]

prōdĭtus, a, um, part. prodo.

prō-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give forth; to hand down* (to memory), *transmit, record.*

prō-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead out.*

prōductus, a, um, part. produco.

proelior, āri ātus, *to engage, fight a battle.*

proelĭum, ĭi, n., *a battle, combat.*

prōfectĭo, ōnis, f., *a going away, setting out.* [proficiscor.]

prŏfectus, a, um, part. proficiscor.

prŏfĭciscor, profic-isci prŏfectus, *to set out, start, depart.*

prŏfĭtĕor, ēri, fessus, *to declare publicly avow*; *to offer freely, promise.* [profateor.]

prŏ-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee, decamp.*

prō-gnātus, a, um, part. [gnatus= natus, nascor], *born, sprung, descended* (from some one).

prō-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to go forward, advance.* [gradior.]

prŏ-hĭbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to keep back, hinder, prevent; to defend, protect.* [habeo.]

prō-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to throw forth, fling away.* [pro-iacio.]

prŏinde, adv., *accordingly, therefore; (in like manner).*

prōmiscuē, adv. *promiscuously, in common.*

prō-missus, a, um, pf. part. of promitto; (of hair) *long, flowing.*

prō-nuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce, proclaim.*

prŏpĕ, comp. prŏpĭus, prep. w. acc. and adv., *near, nigh.*

prō-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive before oneself, to drive back.*

prŏ-pĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hasten.*

prŏpinquĭtas, ātis, f., *nearness.* [propinquus.]

prŏpinquus, a, um, adj., *near;* as subst., **prŏpinquus**, i, m., *a kinsman, relation.*

prō-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put* or *set forth, to point out, to offer, proffer as a reward.*

prospectus, ūs, m., *view.*

prōprĭus, a, um, adj., *one's own, special*: as subst., **proprium**, ii, n., *a peculiar* or *characteristic mark, a sign.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *by reason of, on account of.*

prō-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

prō-pulsō, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to drive back, repel.* [propello.]

prō-sĕquor, i, cūtus, *to pursue, to continue the pursuit.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, *to benefit, be of service to.*

prō-tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to cover in front, cover, protect.*

prō-terrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to frighten* or *scare away, to affright.*

prōtĭnus, adv., *forthwith.*

prōvectus, see prōvĕho.

prōvĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, *to advance, carry forward.*

prōvĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come forth, to be produced, to grow.*

prō-vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, (1) *to see beforehand, to foresee,* (2) *provide for.*

prōvincĭa, ae, f., *a province.*

prōvīsus, v. prōvideo.

proxĭmē, adv.

proxĭmus, a, um, adj., *nearest, next.*

pūbes and **pūber**, ĕris, adj., *grown up, adult;* as subst., **pūbĕres**, um, m., *grown up men, men.*

publĭcē, adv., *on behalf* or *in the name of the State* or *people.* [publicus.]

publĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take and apply to the use of the State* or *community, to confiscate.* [publicus.]

publĭcus, a, um, adj., *belonging to the people, State,* or *community.* [for populicus, from populus.]

pŭĕrīlis, e, adj., *boyish, of boyhood.* [puer.]

pugna, ae, f., *a battle, combat, fight.*

pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to clear, exculpate, excuse.*

pŭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think.*

Q.

quā, adv., *where, by which way.* [abl., f. of qui.]

quădringenti, ae, a, card. num. adj., *four hundred.* [quattuor, centum.]

quaero, ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, *to seek, ask, enquire.*

quaestĭo, ōnis, f., *an examination* or *inquisition by torture.* [quaero.]

quaestor, ōris, m., *a quaestor.*

quaestus, ūs, m, *a gaining, acquiring.* [quaero.]

quam, adv. and conj.; (1) *as*; (2) *than*: with superl. adj. or adv., *as..as possible.*

quanto, rel. adv., *by as much as, according as, the* (e.g. "*the* more, the merrier"). [quantus.]

quantus, a, um, adj., *how great, how much*; *as much as.* [quam.]

quantus-vīs, tăvis, tumvus, adj., *as great as you will, ever so great, no matter how great.* [vīs, fr. volo, vīs, vult, "*you wish.*"]

quārē, adv., *wherefore, why.* [quae, res.]

quartus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *the fourth.*

quattŭor, card. num. adj., *four.*

quĕror, quĕri, questus sum, *to complain.*

qui, quae, quod, pron. rel. and (used adjectively) interrog., *who, which, what, that.*

quīcumque, (or -**cunque**), quaecumque, quodcumque, pron. rel. *whoever, whatever, all that, everything that.*

quid, (neut. of **quis**), adv., *why?*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, pron indef., *a certain, a certain one, one.*

quĭdem, adv., *indeed.*

quĭes, ētis, f., *rest, repose.*

quĭētus, a, um, adj., *at rest, quiet, peaceful.* [quiesco, quies.]

quin, conj., *but that, that not.* [qui, *how*, ne.]

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, pron. interrog., *who, which; what, pray?* [In ch. 44, B. v. = uter.]

quindĕcim, *fifteen.*

quingenti, ae, a, *five hundred.* [quinque, centum.]

quinquāginta, *fifty.*

quis, (quae), quid, (1) pron. interrog., *who? which? what?* (2) pron. indef. after ne, si, nisi, *any one, any thing.* **ne quis**, *in order that no man.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, pron. indef., *any.*

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, pron. indef. *any, any one, anything* (always in a negative connection).

quisque, quaeque, quodque, pron. indef., *each, every.*

quō, adv., *whither.*

quō, conj., *in order that* (used with comparative degree instead of ut).

quŏ-ad, conj., *till, until.*

quod, conj., *because; that.*

quŏn-ĭam, conj., *since, seeing, that, whereas.* [quom=cum, iam.]

quŏ-que, conj., *also, too.*

quōque, abl. of quisque, *each.*

quŏtānnīs, adv., *every year, yearly.*

quŏtĭens or **quŏtĭes**, adv., *how often, as often as.* [quot.]

quotīdiē, adv., *daily; day by day.*

R.

rādix, īcis, f., *a root.*

rāmus, i, m., *a bough, branch.*

rapīna, ae, f., *pillage, plunder.*

rārus, a, um, adj., *few, sparse, few and far between.*

rāsus, a um, part. of rado, *shaven.*

rătĭo, ōnis, f., *a reckoning, an account; a transaction, business; a care, consideration, regard* for a thing; *fashion, system, way.*

ratis, is, f., *a raft.*

rĕ-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go back, fall back, retire.*

rĕcens, tis, adj., *fresh, recent.*

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat, refuge.*

rĕcessus, ūs, m., *a going back, retreat.* [recedo.]

rĕ-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive;* se, *to betake oneself* anywhere, *to retire, retreat.* [capio.]

rĕ-cĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to read out* (a letter, etc.).

rĕ-clīno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bend back, lean back.*

rĕ-cŭpĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get back, recover, regain.*

rĕ-cūso, āre, āvi, ātum, *to object to, refuse.* [causa.]

red-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give back, restore; to render, grant.*

reddĭtus, see red-do.

rĕd-ĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, īre, *to come back; to be reduced to; to be referred to.*

rĕd-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to bring* or *reduce* to any condition. [ago.]

reditus, see red-eo.

rĕ-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead back, draw off* troops.

rĕfectus. *V.* reficio.

rĕfĕro, -ferre, rettŭli (retuli), rĕlātum, *to carry back; report; refer.* gratiam referre, *to show gratitude, to repay, requite.*

rĕfĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to refit, repair.*

rĕ-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee back.*

rĕgĭo, ōnis, f., *a district, territory.* [rego.]

regno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be king, to reign.* [regnum.]

regnum, i, n., *kingly authority, sovereignty, chieftainship; a kingdom, the territory* of a king or chief. [rex.]

rĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to direct; to control, govern, rule.*

rĕ-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to go back, retreat.*

rēiectus, a, um, part. reicio.

rĕ-ĭcĭo, ĕre, reiēci, iectum, *to cast back, drive back.* [iacio.]

rĕlātus; a, um, part. refero.

rĕ-lēgātus, a, um, part. relēgo.

rĕ-lēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to send away, remove out of the way.*

rĕlictus, a, um, v. relinquo.

rēlĭgĭo, ōnis, f., *reverence for the gods, religion*: in plur., *superstitious practices; matters of religion, scruples of conscience.*

rĕ-linquo, ĕre, līqui, lictum, *to leave behind, to leave remaining*: pass., *to remain.*

rĕlĭquus, a, um, adj., *that is left, remaining;* in plur. as subst. **rĕlĭqui**, ōrum, m., *the others, the rest.* [relinquo.]

rĕmăneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to stay, remain behind.*

rēmĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to row.*

rĕ-missus, a, um, part of remitto, *slack, less severe.*

rĕ-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send back, to slacken, remit, abate.*

rĕ-mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move back, withdraw.*

rēmus, i, m., *an oar.*

rēnō, (rhēno), ōnis, m., some take this to mean *a reindeer-skin*; it is at any rate *a fur pelisse* or *jacket*, made from the skin of an animal dressed with the hair on.

rĕ-pello, ĕre, reppŭli, rĕpulsum, *to drive back.*

rĕpente, adv., *suddenly.*

rĕpentīnus, a, um, adj., *sudden, unlooked-for.*

rĕ-pĕrĭo, īre, reppĕri, rĕpertum, *to find, meet with.* [pario.]

rĕpertus, a, um, part. reperio.

rĕ-pĕto, ĕre, īi or īvi, ītum, *to ask* or *apply again for; demand as a right.*

rĕ-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear back.*

rĕ-posco, ĕre, (no perf. or sup.), *to exact, require.*

re-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to blame, find fault with.*

rĕpulsus, a, um, part. repello.

rĕquiro, ĕre, quīsīvi or īi, quīsītum, *to demand.*

rēs, rei, f., *a thing, matter, fact, event*, etc. The exact meaning depends on the context, e.g. **res frumentaria**, *corn supply, provisions.*

rescĭdi, see rescindo.

rescindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *to break up.* [scindo, *to cleave.*]

rĕ-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to save up, reserve*; *halt.*

rĕ-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, *to oppose, withstand.*

rē-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to look back* or *behind one.*

rē-spondĕo, ēre, di, sum, *to answer, reply.*

responsum, i, n., *an answer.*

rēspublĭca, reipublicae, f., *a commonwealth. State*; *the public weal.*

rē-stĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to set up again; to replace, restore, revive.* [statuo.]

rĕ-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold fast, keep, maintain, preserve.*

rĕ-vertor, i, versus, *to turn back, return, retire.*

rĕ-vŏco, āre, āvi. ātum, *to recall, summon to return, challenge.*

rex, rēgis, m., *a ruler* of a territory, *a king, chieftain.* [rego.]

rhēda, ae, f., *carriage, chariot.*

rīpă ae, f., *a bank of a river.*

rīvus, i, m., *a small stream of water, a brook.*

rŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to ask, beg, request.*

rūmor, ōris, m., *hearsay, unauthenticated report, rumor.*

rursus, adv., *back, back again, again.* [contr. fr. revorsus from revertor.]

S.

sacrāmentum, i, n., *oath, military oath, oath of allegiance.*

săcrĭfĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *a sacrifice.* [sacer, facio.]

saepe, adv., *frequently, often.*

saepenumero, v. saepe.

săgŭlum, i, n., dimin., *a small military cloak.* [sagum.]

saltus, ūs, m., (1) *a woodland pasture*; (2) *a mountain pass.*

sălus, ūtis, f., *safety.*

sancĭo, īre, xi, ctum, *to make sacred* or *inviolable* by a religious act; *to decree, establish, ordain.*

sanctus, a, um, part. sancio: as adj., of persons, *sacred, inviolable.*

sānus, a, um, adj., *moderate, reasonable.*

săpĭo, ĕre, īvi or ĭi, *to have sense* or *discernment.*

sarcio, īre, sarsi, sarsum, *to mend, repair.*

sătisfăcio, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to give satisfaction, satisfy, content*; *to make excuse, apologize.* [often written separately: satis, facio.]

saucĭus, a, um, adj., *wounded.*

scāla, ae, f., *a ladder, a scaling-ladder.* [for scandla, from scando, *to climb.*]

scĕlĕrātus, a, um, part. scelero: as adj., *bad, wicked, infamous*: in masc., subst., *a miscreant.*

scĕlĕro, āre, no perf., atum, *to pollute with crime.* [scelus.]

scindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *to cut, rend*: vallum, *to pull* or *tear down.*

scĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, *to know.*

scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write.*

scūtum, i, n., *a shield.*

sē, **sēsē**, pron. reflex. of both numbers (gen. sui, dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē or sēsē), *himself, herself, itself, themselves*: inter se, *with each other.*

sēcius, adv., comp. of sĕcus, *otherwise:* nihilo secius, *nevertheless.*

sector, āri, ātus sum, intensive, *to pursue eagerly.* [sequor.]

sĕcundus, a, um, adj., (1) *the following* or *next to the first* in time or order, *the second*; (2) *favorable.* [sequor.]

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdēs, is, f., *a seat, dwelling-place, settlement.* [sedeo.]

sĕgĕs, ĕtis, f., *corn-field, standing grain, corn in the field, crop.*

sēmĭta, ae, f., *a path.*

semper, adv., *always, ever.*

sĕnātus, ūs., m., *the council of elders, the Senate.* [senex.]

sententĭa, ae, f., *a way of thinking, opinion.* [sentio.]

sentĭo, sentire, sensi, sum, *to perceive, notice, observe.*

septem, card. num. adj., *seven.*

septentrĭo, ōnis, almost always in the plural, *the seven stars of the Bear, the north.* [literally the seven ploughing oxen, septem triones.]

septĭmus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *seventh* [septem.]

septingenti, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred.* [septem centum.]

sĕquor, i, sĕcūtus, *to follow, attend.*

sermo, ōnis, m., *a talking, conversation.* [sero=*to join* words.]

sēro, adv., *too late.* [serus.]

sĕro, ĕre, sēvi, sătum, *to sow.*

servīlis, e, adj., *belonging to* or *of a slave.* [servus.]

servĭtūs, ūtis, f., *slavery.* [servus.]

servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to keep, lay up, preserve, beset.*

servus, i, m., *a slave, serf.*

sexāgintā, *sixty*

sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred.* [See centum.]

sē-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call apart, take aside.*

sī, conj., *if.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus.*

siccĭtas, ātis, f., *dryness* (of the weather), *drought.* [siccus.]

sīc-ut (sicut), adv., *as, just as.*

sīc-uti, (sīcŭti) = sicut.

sīdus, ĕris, n., *a constellation, a group of stars.*

signĭfĭcātĭo, ōnis, f., *a making of a sign* or *token*; *tidings.* [signum, facio.]

signum, i, n., *a military standard, ensign.*

silva, ae, f., *a wood, forest.*

silvestris, e, adj., *wooded, woodland* [silva.]

sĭmĭlis, e, adj., *like, like unto.*

sĭmŭl, adv., *at the same time, at once.*

sĭmŭlācrum, i, n., *an image.* [simulo = *to make like*, similis.]

sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, f., *pretence.*

simul atque, conj. adv., *as soon as.*

sĭmultās, ătis, f., *deceit.*

sīn, conj., *if however, but if.*

sĭne, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim, adv., *one by one, singly.* [singuli.]

singŭlāris, e, adj., (*alone of its kind*, hence) *singular, remarkable.* [singuli.]

singŭli, ae, a, distrib. num adj., *one to each, separate, singly.*

sĭnister, tra, trum, adj., *left hand, adverse.*

sīnistrorsus, adv., *towards the left side, to the left.*

sĭtus, us, m., *position.* [sino.]

sīve (seu), conj. *whether* (= *either if*), sive (seu)....sive (seu), *whether....or.*

societās, ātis, f., *alliance, league.*

sŏcĭus, ĭi, m., *an ally.*

Sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun, the Sun-god.*

sŏlĕo, ēre, ĭtus sum, semi-dep., *to be accustomed, to be wont.*

sŏlĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *a lonely place, a desert, wilderness.* [solus.]

sollĭcĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try to win over, incite, instigate* for warlike purposes.

sollĭcĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *anxiety,*

sōlum, adv., *alone, only.*

sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone, only.*

solvo, ĕre, solvi, sŏlūtum, *to loose*, (naves), *to weigh anchor, set sail.*

spătĭum, ĭi, n., *a space, distance, interval.*

spĕcĭes, ēi, f., *outward appearance look, seeming*: in speciem, *for a show, seemingly.* [specio].

specto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to look at, look to, bear in mind*; *to look for*, i.e., *await, expect.* [specio.]

spĕcŭlātor, ōris, m., *a scout, explorer.*

spēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hope, expect.*

spes, spĕi, f., *hope.*

spŏlio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to rob, despoil, strip off.*

sponte, abl. f, no other case found but a (rare) gen. spontis: in expressions, sponte meâ, tuâ, suâ. *of free will, of one's own accord.* [spondeo.]

stătim, adv., *on the spot*, i.e., *at once, forthwith, straight-way, immediately.* [sto.]

stătio, ōnis, f., *an outpost, a roadstead.*

stătūra, ae, f., *height* or *size* of the body, *stature.* [sto.]

stătus, ūs, m., *condition, position, circumstances.* [sto.]

stīpendĭum, ĭi, n., *a tax, tribute; soldier's pay.* [stips, pendo.]

stirps, is, f., *stem, stock, race.*

sto, āre, stĕti, stātum, *to stand; to abide, adhere to.*

strāmentum, i, n., *straw:* casae stramentis tectae, *thatched.* [sterno.]

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter.*

stŭdĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to take pains about, devote oneself to.*

stŭdĭōsē, adv., *eagerly, carefully, with much pains.* [stu-diosus, studium.]

stŭdĭum, ĭi, n., *study, devotion to:* studia rei militaris, *military pursuits.* [studeo.]

sŭb, prep. w. acc. or abl., *under.*

sub-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to draw up.*

subductĭo, ōnis, f., *the hauling ashore of a ship.* [sub, duco.]

subĕo, ire, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to enter, undergo.*

sub-iectus, a, um, part. of subicio, *lying beneath.*

sŭb-ĭcio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to place beneath.*

sŭbĭto, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.* [sub, eo.]

sublātus, a, um, part. tollo.

sub-lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise up, support.*

sub-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send up,* (reinforcements).

submŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move out of the way, move on, repulse.*

subruo, ĕre, rŭi, rŭtum, *to undermine.*

sub-sĕquor, i, cūtus, *to follow close after.*

subsĭdĭum, ĭi, n., *aid, relief, reinforcement, support.* [sub-sideo.]

sub-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, *to stand still, to hold out, hold fast.*

sub-sum, no perf., esse, *to be close at hand.*

sub-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come to one's aid, to succour.*

suc-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come into the place of, succeed.* [sub.]

suc-çendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to set on fire from below*; in gen., *to set alight, set on fire.*

suc-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cisum, *to cut down.*

suc-cīsus. See succido.

suc-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run* or *hasten to the aid* or *help* of anyone.

sŭdis (nom. sing. rare), is, f., *a stake.*

suffrāgĭum, ĭi, n., *a vote.*

suggestus, ūs, m., *a raised place, mound, platform* for speaking.

sum, esse, fui, v. subst., *to be.*

summa, ae, f., *the whole*; summa imperii, *supreme command.*

summus, a, um, superl. adj., f. superus, *the top of.*

sum-mitto, (subm.), ĕre, mīsī, missum, *to send up, send off, despatch.*

sumptŭōsus, a, um, adj., *costly, expensive.* [sumptus.]

sūmo, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take*; **poenas sumere**, *to take satisfaction, exact the penalty, inflict punishment.*

sŭpĕrĭor, ĭus, comp. adj. See superus.

sŭpĕro, āre, āvi. ātum, *to overcome, conquer, prevail.* [super.]

sŭper-sum, esse, fui, *to be over* (as a remainder), *to be left, remain, survive.*

sŭpĕrus, a, um. adj., *that is above, upper*: comp. **sŭpĕrior**, ĭus, of time, *former, past, previous*; of strength in a battle or other contest, *superior, stronger, victorious*: sup. **sŭprēmus** and **summus**, of rank, etc., *highest, most distinguished*: **summae res**, *things of the highest importance.* [super.]

supplĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *punishment,* (of death), *execution.* [supplex, sup-plico = *to bend the knees, kneel down* (for execution, etc.).]

sŭprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., *above*; of time, *before.* [superus.]

suscĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to undertake.*

suspectus, a, um, part. suspicio.

suspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, ctum, *to mistrust, suspect.* [sub-specio.]

suspĭcĭo, ōnis, f., *mistrust, suspicion.*

suspĭcor, ari, atus sum, *to suspect.*

sustento, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to bear, endure, support.* [sustineo.]

sustĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnui, tentum, *to hold up* or *out against, to withstand.* [subs=sub, teneo.]

sustŭli, v. tollo.

sŭus, a, um, pron. poss. of 3rd person, *his own, her own, its own, their own*; *his, her, its, their.*

T.

tabernāculum, i, n., *a tent.*

tabulātum, i, n., *a floor, storey* (of a tower or house).

tālĕa, ae, *bar, rod* (of iron.)

tālis, e, adj., *of such a kind*; *such* (referring to quality always).

tămen, adv., *however, nevertheless, yet.*

tămetsi, conj., *notwithstanding that, although.* [contr. fr. tamen etsi.]

tango, ĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactum, *to touch.*

tanto, see tantus.

tantŭlus, a, um, adj., dim., so *little, so small.* [tantus.]

tantus, a, um, adj., *so great* in amount, size, etc.: subst. **tantum**, i, n., *so much*: abl. tanto (with comparatives), *by so much, so much the, the* (cf. quantus).

tantum, adv., *only.*

tardo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to impede, retard.*

taurus, i, m., *a bull.*

taxus, i, f., *a yew-tree.*

tectus, a, um, part. tego.

tĕgĭmentum, i, n., *a covering.* [tego.]

tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to cover.*

tēlum, i, n., *a weapon for throwing, a javelin*, etc.

tĕmĕrārĭus, a, um, adj., *rash, inconsiderate.* [temere.]

tĕmĕrē, adv., *at random, rashly, heedlessly.*

tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, f., *rashness, indiscretion.* [temere.]

tempĕrātus, a, um, part. of tempero. *temperate.*

tempestas, ātis, f., *season of the year; storm.*

tempto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to try, tempt.*

tempus, ŏris, n., *time.*

tĕnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold, keep.*

tento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try, test, tempt, try to influence, endeavor.*

tĕnŭis, e, adj., (*thin*); *feeble, weak.*

terra, ae, f., *the* (dry) *land; the earth*; plur. terrae, *the earth, the world.*

terrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to frighten.*

terrĭto, are (no perf. or sup.) freq., *to put in terror, to frighten.* [terreo.]

terrŏr, ōris, m., *fright, alarm.*

tertĭus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the third.* [ter.]

tertĭus-dĕcĭmus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the thirteenth.*

testĭmōnĭum, ĭi, n., *evidence, proof.* [testor.]

testūdo, ĭnis, f., *a tortoise.* As a military term, the word means *a covering* or *shed* for the protection of soldiers attacking fortifications. [testa=*a shell.*]

tĭmĕo, ēre, ŭi, (no sup.) *to dread, fear.*

tĭmĭde, adv., *faint-heartedly, timidly.* [timidus, timeo.]

tĭmor, ōris, m., *dread, fear.* [timeo.]

tŏlĕro, are, avi, atum, *to bear, endure, sustain.*

tollo, tollĕre, sustŭli, sublātum, *to raise, lift*, or *set up; to take away, remove.*

tormentum, i, n., *torture.* [torqueo, *to twist.*]

torrĕo, ēre, torrŭi, tostum, *to scorch.*

tŏt, num. adj. indecl., *so many.*

tōtus, a, um (gen. ĭus, dat. i), adj., *the whole, entire, all.*

tractus, v. traho.

trādo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give* or *hand over; to deliver* by teaching, *to teach.* [trans, do.]

trādūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead* or *bring across* or *over.* [trans, duco.]

trāgŭla, ae, f., *a kind of javelin* or *lance* used by the Gauls. [traho.]

traho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *to draw, drag along.*

trāĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to pierce through, transfix.* [trans, iacio.]

tranquillĭtās, ātis, f., *calm.*

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over, on the far side of.*

transduco. See traduco.

trans-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go across* or *over, to cross.*

trans-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear across, to bring* or *carry over.*

trans-fīgo, ĕre, xi, xum, *to pierce through, transfix.*

transĭtus, ūs, m., *a going* or *passing over, a passage, crossing.* [transeo.]

translātus, a, um, part. transfero.

trans-mărīnus, a, um, adj., *brought across* or *from beyond sea, imported.*

transmissus, ūs, m., *crossing, interval, distance.*

transporto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey across.*

trecenti, ae, a, adj., *three hundred.*

trĕpĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bustle about anxiously, to hurry with alarm.*

trēs, trĭa, card. num. adj., *three.*

tribunus, i, m., *a chieftain, commander, tribune*; **tribuni militum**, *military tribunes*, officers of the army, six to each legion, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time.

trĭbuo, ĕre, trĭbŭi, trĭbūtum, *to assign.*

trĭbūtum, i, n., *a stated payment, tribute.*

trīni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib., *three at a time*; *in groups of three.* [tres.]

trĭpertīto, adv., *in three divisions.* [tres, pars.]

trĭquĕtrus, tra, trum, adj., *triangular.*

tŭĕor, ēri, tūtus, *to see to, defend, protect.*

tum, adv., *then.*

tŭmultus, us, m., *commotion, disturbance.*

tŭmŭlus, i, m., *a mound.* [tumeo = *to swell.*]

turma, ae, f., *a squadron.*

turpis, e, adj., *base, shameful, dishonorable.*

turris, is (acc. turrim and turrem; abl. turri and turre), f., *a tower.*

tūtus, a, um, part. tueor. As adj., *safe.*

U.

ŭbĭ, adv., (of place), *where*; (of time), *when.*

ulciscor, i, ultus, *to take vengeance on, avenge oneself on.*

ullus, a, um, adj., *any, any at all.* [for unulus, dimin. of unus.]

ultĕrĭor, ĭus, comp. adj., *farther.*

ultĭmus, a, um, sup. adj., *farthest, most distant*: **ultĭmi**, ōrum, m., *the hindmost.*

ultro, adv., *unasked*; *unprovoked*; *of one's own accord.*

ultus, v. ulciscor.

ŭlŭlātus, us, m., *a yell, war-whoop.*

ūnā, adv., *together, in company.* [unus.]

undĕ, adv., *from which place, whence.*

undĭquĕ, adv., *from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides.*

unĭversus, a, um, adj., *all together, in a body, as a whole. whole.*

ūnus, a, um, card. num. adj., *one*: ad unum, *to a man*, i. e., *without exception.*

urbs, is, f., *city.*

urus, i, m., *a wild-ox, aurochs.*

usquĕ, adv., *all the way*: usque ad, *right up to.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, employment*; *need, occasion*; *usefulness, use*: ex usu esse, *to be useful* or *advantageous.* [utor.]

ūsus, a, um, part. utor.

ŭt or **ŭti**, adv. and conj., with indic., *as*; with subjunctive, *that, so that, in order that.*

ŭter, ŭtra, ŭtrum, pron. interrog., *which, of the two.*

ŭter-que, ŭtrăque, ŭtrumque, pron., *each of two, both* (separately; opp. to ambo, *both together*).

ŭtĭ, conj. See ut.

ūti, infin. of ūtor.

ūtor, i, ūsus sum, *to use, accept, enjoy.*

uxor, ōris f., *a wife.*

V.

văcātĭo, ōnis, f., *freedom, exemption* from a service, etc. [vaco.]

vădum, i, n., *a ford.*

vāgīna, ae, f., *a scabbard, sheath.*

văgor, āri, ātus, *to go to and fro, roam, wander.* [vagus.]

vălĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to be strong*: *to to have power* or *influence, to avail.*

valles or **vallis**, is, f., *a vale, valley.*

vallum, i, n., *an earthen wall* or *rampart set with palisades, a rampart.*

vărĭĕtās, ātis, f., *diversity, variety.*

vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to empty of inhabitants, to lay waste.* [vastus.]

vectīgal, ālis, n., *tax.* [veho.]

vectōrius, a, um, adj., *for transport.* [veho.]

velim and **vellem**, see volo.

vēlōcĭtās, ātis, f., *speed, swiftness.* [velox.]

vēlōcĭter, adv., *speedily, swiftly*; comp. **velocius**; sup. **velocissime.** [velox.]

vēnātĭo, ōnis, f., *hunting, the chase.* [venor.]

vēnātor, ōris, m., *a hunter.* [venor.]

vĕnia, ae, f., *pardon, favor, indulgence.*

vĕnĭo, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come.*

ventĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to come often, to keep coming.* [venio.]

ventus, i, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

verbum, i, n., *a word.*

vĕrĕor, ēri, ĭtus, *to fear* or *be afraid.*

vergo, vergĕre, *to incline, turn, verge.*

vĕrĭtus, a, um, part. vereor.

vērō, adv., *in truth, assuredly, however.* [verus.]

versor, āri, ātus, (properly the mid. form of verso, are, freq. of verto), *stay, dwell, be* in a place, or *mix among* or *with people.*

versus, ūs, m., *a line* of poetry, *a verse.*

versus, ad. *towards, in the direction of.*

vĕrūtum, i, n., *a dart, javelin*. [veru, *a spit.*]

vesper, ĕris, (locative vesperi, acc. mostly vesperum), m., *the evening.*

vestīgĭum,, ĭi, n., *a footprint, track, trace.*

vestio, īre, vestīvi, vestītum, *to clothe.* [vestis.]

vestītus. See vestio.

vĕto, āre, vetŭi, vĕtĭtum, *to forbid.*

vĕtus, ĕris, adj., *old.*

vexillum, i, n., *a flag*; a red flag placed upon the general's tent as a signal for battle or marching.

vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harass, ravage.*

vĭa, ae, f., *a way, street, road.*

vīcēni, ae, a, num., distrib. adj., *twenty each.* [viginti.]

vĭcēsĭmus (vicessimus and vigesimus), a, um, num. ord. adj., *the twentieth.* [viginti.]

vĭcĭes, adv., *twenty times.* [viginti.]

victĭma, ae, f., *a sacrifice, victim.*

victor, ōris, m., *a conqueror*; in apposition, *victorious.* [vinco.]

victōrĭa, ae, f., *victory.*

victus, a, um, part. vinco.

victus, ūs, m. (*that on which one lives*), *provisions, sustenance, victuals.* [vivo.]

vīcus, i, m.. *village.*

vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *to see*; pass. videor, *I seem* or *am seen*; impers. pass., *to seem fit* or *good.*

viginti, adj., indecl., *twenty.*

vīmen, ĭnis, n., *a pliant twig, withe, osier.*

vinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *to conquer, be victorious*: **vincite**=*have your own way.*

vĭŏlo, āre, avi, atum, *to do violence to, injure.* [vis.]

vĭr, vĭri, m., *a man, a husband*

vīres, v. vis.

virgo, inis, f., *a maiden.*

virtūs, ūtis, f., *manliness*; *bravery, courage, valor*; *worth, virtue.* [vir.]

vīs, acc. vim, abl. vi. f. in sing., *violence, force, power*; plur. vires, virium, etc., *bodily strength.*

vīta, ae, f., *life.* [vivo.]

vīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to avoid, evade.*

vitrum. i, n., *woad.*

vīvo, ĕre, vixi, victum, *to live.*

vīvus, a, um, adj., *alive, living.* [vivo.]

vobis, see vos.

vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call, invite, challenge.*

vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭi, *to wish, will, be willing.*

vŏluntārĭus, a, um, adj., *willing, of one's own free will*: **voluntarii**, ōrum, m., *volunteers.* [voluntas.]

vŏluntās, ātis, f., *will, free-will, inclination, disposition.*

vŏluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure.*

vōs, plur. of **tu**, pron. pers., *you.*

vŏvĕo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *to vow, to promise solemnly.*

vox, vōcis, f., *a voice, cry.*

vulgo, adv., *commonly, generally.* [vulgus.]

vulgus, i, (usually n., occasionally m., but not in Caesar) *the mass of the people, the people, the public.*

vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wound, injure* by a wound. [vulnus.]

vulnus, ĕris, n., *a wound.*

EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION

BASED ON BOOK V.

N.B.—The first five Exercises are based on Chapter 1.

Exercise 1.

Cases.

1. Lucius and Appius are consuls ; Lucius is consul.

2. Lucius (being) consul, Caesar sets out for hither Gaul.

3. In the consulship of Lucius and Appius, Caesar set out (Historical Pres.) from the army (*exercitus*, *-ūs*) into Italy.

4. He puts Labienus, Titurius (and) Cotta, (his) lieutenants in-charge-of the army.

5. To these lieutenants he-gives-orders (*impero*) that they should build (*facere*) a fleet (*classis*).

6. They will build ships and repair the old (ones).

7. These ships Caesar will use against (*contra*) Britain (*Britannia*).

8. They make the ships low and broad.

9. The Romans use in the Mediterranean high and narrow ships.

10. In the Ocean the Gauls use lower and wider vessels than (those) which the Romans are accustomed to employ.

11. Many things were useful to the lieutenants.

Exercise 2.

Abl. Absol.

1. Caesar left (*discedo*) for Britain, when Pompeius and Crassus were consuls.

2. The assizes have been held ; I will now (*iam*) set out for Italy.

3. After holding the assizes, Caesar returns (*revertor*, 3) to the army.

4. Part of the province had been laid waste by the Gauls. This part having been devastated, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.

5. These things were reported. These (rel. pron.) things having been reported to Caesar, he ordered (*impero*) hostages.

6. He gave-orders-to the Gauls (for) many hostages.

7. These speeches were delivered (*habeo*). When these speeches had been delivered (part. phrase), Caesar replied (*respondeo, -di*).

Exercise 3.

Acc. with Inf.—Tenses of the Inf.

1. The province was being ravaged. He kept-hearing that the province was being ravaged.

2. Part has already (*iam*) been devastated by the enemy. They heard (perf.) that this part had already been laid waste by the soldiers of the enemy.

3. Caesar will pursue them with war. Caesar made-clear that he would pursue them with war and ravage their lands.

4. They heard (from time to time) that Caesar was coming (*venio*, 4) that his lieutenants had built ships and that he would demand hostages.

5. Caesar believed (*credo, credidi*) that the Pirustae had done all these things (neut. pl.) as a matter of public policy.

6. He learned (*cognosco, cognovi*) that they were ready to give satisfaction.

7. Caesar said that he would, after hostages were sent (abl. abs.), appoint (=give) assessors.

Exercise 4.

Iubeo and Impero.

1. He ordered them to build ships and repair the old ones (use *iubeo*).

2. He gives orders to Labienus, Titurius (and) Cotta that they build ships and repair the old ones.

3. He orders ships to be built (use (a) *iubeo* (b) *impero*; with *impero* use either *ut* or *inf.*)*

4. He orders hostages from the Pirustae (use *impero*. and dat. of person receiving the order).

5. He bids them bring the hostages to himself.

Sequence of Tenses.

6. It was Caesar's custom to order (express by proper tense of *impero.*) conquered (*victus, -a, -um*) states to give hostages.

7. He had ordered that these should be brought to him.

8. The lieutenants gave orders (historical present) to the men (*miles*) to build the ships low and broad.

9. He will give orders for the repairing of the ships (="that the ships be repaired").

* *Impero* may take the infin. in passive.

10. He has given orders for the old ships to be repaired and new ones to be constructed by the soldiers over-whom he has placed the lieutenants.

11. Bid the man come. Command the man to come.

Exercise 5.

Gerund and Gerundive.

1. Great was the speed of loading these vessels.

2. They were low for-the-purpose-of (*ad*) loading.

3. The cause of building (them) was this. Caesar wished to cross (*transire*) to Britain.

4. What things (n. pl.) were required (*usui esse*) for building the ships (Gerundive), were brought from Spain.

5. Many things are necessary (*usui*) for repairing a fleet.

6. He bids the lieutenants see-to (*curo*) the equipping of a fleet.

7. Caesar bids the ambassadors see that hostages are brought.

*8. A fleet was fitted out for the sake of crossing to Britain (use *causā* after its case).

9. He goes to Gaul to hold the assizes (*conventus agere;* use *ad* and Gerundive).

Exercise 6.

Review.

These ships having been built and equipped and the assizes being over, he returns (*revertor*) to the army. When he had arrived there he found (*invenio*) XXVIII war ships (*naves longae*) built (*instruo, instructum*) and six hundred others fitted out. Having praised the soldiers (use passive partl.) he ordered all to assemble at (*convenire ad*) the ocean, because he had learnt (*cognosco, -novi*) that there was a short (*brevis*) passage (*traiectus*) to Britain. He himself with four legions sets out for the Treveri because he had heard that they were not coming to the councils (*concilium*).

Exercise 7.

(See Chapter 1 and 2).

In the following year, when Lucius and Appius were consuls, Caesar prepared again to cross to Britain. In the winter he ordered his lieutenants to see that a fleet (*classis*) was built and fitted out (*armo*). After holding the assizes he sets out to the Pirustae because he heard they were laying waste that part of the Roman Province which bordered on (*attingo*) Illyricum. Having received the submission of the Pirustae (*the P. having been received into surrender*) and having appointed (*do, dare*) assessors among them, he returns to the coast (*ora maritima*) where (*ubi*) he finds many ships built and old ones repaired.

Exercise 8.

(See Chapter 2, 3 and 4).

Having ordered all the ships to assemble at Portus Itius, he leads four legions against the Treveri, who were defying his authority (*imperio non parēre*) and stirring up the Germans. Of this state there were two chiefs, Indutiomarus and Cingetorix. One of these, learning of Caesar's approach, surrenders to Caesar, and is received as a friend (*into friendship*). The other, Indutiomarus, at first (*primo*) endeavored to resist (Dative) Caesar, gathering (*perf. pass. participle*) all his (people) into the woods. But being frightened by Caesar's arrival, he offered to surrender unconditionally, (*said he was willing to entrust himself and his fortunes to his honor* (*fides*). Nevertheless Caesar, after receiving hostages from Indutiomarus, made Cingetorix head of the Treveri (*conciliated the chiefs of the T. to C.*); at which the former (*ille*) was very indignant (*bore grievously*).

Exercise 9.

1. The chieftains of the Treveri were not able to consult the interests of their states, so (*itaque*) looked out for themselves.

2. It was of great interest to Caesar that a friend should rule over (*impero*, with Dat.) the Treveri.

3. Indutiomarus feared that all would desert him (=himself).

4. Caesar feared that Indutiomarus would not be a friend (see F. 185, 3, 4; P. II., 154).

5. Indutiomarus did not come to Caesar, in order that the state might be the more easily kept loyal (*in officio*).

6. What (*plur.*) is going on among the Treveri? Cingetorix will make known (*ostendo*) to Caesar what is going on.

7. I and all my (people) will be loyal, nor will we desert (*deficio ab*) the friendship of the Roman people.

Exercise 10.

(See latter part of Chapter 3).

It-is-for-that-reason-that I am not leaving my friends and am unwilling to come to you. I wish to maintain the loyalty of my state and I fear lest the common people may slip. Consequently the state is at my disposal and I will, if you permit me (fut. indic), come to you in your camp and put myself and my state in your hands (*entrust myself to your honor*).

Exercise 11.

(See Chapter 5).

1. Caesar's legions had reached the harbor.

2. Fifty war-ships built in the territories of the Meldae, had been driven back by storms and had not (*neque*) been able to reach this harbor. They returned to their starting point.

3. The rest were ready for sailing and were equipped with all things.

4. Those, whose loyalty he felt sure of (*confido* with abl.), he left in Gaul. The rest he took with him as hostages.

5. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, especially he wished to have along with him.

Exercise 12.

(See Chapter 6).

1. The Aeduans resented (*graviter fero*) the statement of Dumnorix.

2. We dare not send ambassadors to protest (*deprecor*).

3. Dumnorix begged to be left behind, on the ground that he feared the passage across (*navigatio*).

4. Those who are unaccustomed to sailing always fear the sea.

5. I advise you to remain on (dry) land and not (*neu*) to cross with Caesar.

6. "Not without a reason does it happen that Gaul is being robbed of its chieftains. Caesar's policy is to kill us in Britain. He is afraid to do it in sight of our friends. Pledge (give) me your oath that you will remain in Gaul."

Exercise 13.

(See Chapter 7).

1. Caesar, learning these things, decided to check Dumnorix.

2. I must check Dumnorix at all costs.

3. His madness has already gone too far. He will do me and the State harm.

4. The N.W. wind blows nearly all the time on the coast of Gaul.

5. Caesar will exert himself to maintain-the-loyalty-of Dumnorix (*keep D. in his duty*).

6. When the men (not *homines*) had embarked, he left for home.

7. Caesar orders him either to be brought back or to be slain.

8. Those who were sent to pursue him (*causā* with gerundive) surrounded him and, when he resisted (pres. participle), slew him.

9. In the absence of Caesar, Dumnorix acted in no way as a sane man.

10. I am free and I belong to a free state.

Exercise 14.

(See Chapter 8).

1. He did these things (use *gero*), and left Labienus in Gaul.

2 Having left legions and cavalry on the continent, he set sail at sunset.

3. At day-break he found out that he had left Britain behind on the left.

4. Having been carried on too far by the wind and tide, the ships followed the change of tide and reached the island.

5. On this part of the island he had landed the summer before.

6. He knew that these regions were excellent for landing.

7. The soldiers by not relaxing (perf. participle) their efforts (*labor*) reached the island by rowing the same day.

8. At noon the enemy saw Caesar's ships approaching and, panic-stricken, they left the shore for the woods.

Exercise 15.

(See Chapter 8).

Purpose expressed by ut.

1. Labienus was left behind to guard the coast.

2. He left soldiers to provide corn.

3. They strove to reach the island.

4. We shall strive to equal the speed of the war-galleys.

5. We are exerting ourselves to learn (*cognosco*) many things.

Indirect Question.

6. What was being done in Gaul? Labienus saw what was being done.

7. What (sing.) has Caesar done (*gero*)? We learn what he did when he had crossed into Britain.

8. What had the enemy seen? They were frightened at what (those things which) they had seen. They told their chiefs what they had seen.

9. In what place have the enemy encamped? (*consido, -sedi*).

10. He ascertained in what place they had encamped.

Exercise 16.

(See Chapter 9).

1. Caesar landed his army and selected a site suitable for a camp. The army landed after 12 o'clock (noon).

2. I will leave ten cohorts and 300 cavalry as a guard for the camp.

3. Quintus had been appointed in command of that part of his army which he was leaving at the sea.

4. After mooring the ships at anchor and appointing Atrius in command, he hastened in pursuit of the enemy's forces.

5. The enemy, fearing Caesar, advanced to the river in their chariots and there joined battle.

6. Having advanced and joined battle, they were driven back to the woods.

7. Finding a suitable place, they hid themselves in the woods.

8. A "testudo" was formed by our soldiers and a mound was thrown up. These things having been done, the place was captured.

9. Caesar's cavalry did not pursue the fleeing enemy too far, because a great part of the day had already (*iam*) been spent in landing and fighting.

10. The enemy were driven from the woods no wound having been received by our men.

Exercise 17.

(See Chapter 10.)

1. Next day soldiers were sent to pursue the enemy.

2. The army having advanced some distance, it was reported that a storm had arisen and wrecked the ships.

3. The ships have been cast up on shore, because they could not withstand the force of the storm.

4. The ships having been wrecked and cast up on shore, great inconvenience was caused.

5. Caesar writes (*scribo*) to his lieutenants to send workmen (*faber.*)

Exercise 18.

(See Chapter 11.)

1. Caesar, having learnt of the storm, called back his men from the pursuit (use Gerund) and hastened to the shore.

2. There he found that about forty ships had been lost and that the rest were badly damaged (*affligo*).

3. To Labienus he wrote to send workmen from the continent, and to build (*aedifico*) as many ships as possible with the remaining legions.

4. This was not a matter of much difficulty.

5. Meanwhile Caesar, after hauling up those ships which had not been lost, fortified both ships and camp with one rampart.

6. Having spent ten days in fortifying, he again started out in-pursuit-of (*ad*) the enemy, leaving a few (*pauci*) soldiers to protect the fortification which he had constructed.

7. Having reached the place (use a *cum* clause) where the enemy were, he learned that large forces had assembled and that the supreme command had been given to (*permitto*) Cassivellaunus, chieftain of those tribes which

border-upon (*attingo*) the Thames. Now (*autem*) between Cassivellaunus and the other (*reliqui*) tribes there had hitherto been unceasing warfare. Our arrival however stirred-up (*permoveo*) the Britons to appointing him (gerundive) in charge of the whole war.

Exercise 19.

(See Chapters 12, 13 and 14).

1. Those who have been born in the island itself inhabit the interior of Britain.

2. Those who inhabit the maritime district had their origin in the states of Belgium.

3. The Britons use gold, brass, iron, timber, (and) tin.

4. Of these some are found in the island, others are imported.

5. Those who inhabit Belgium are called Belgae.

6. They bring their ships to port at Kent.

7. He has been called a friend.

8. The ships have been brought to port.

9. Caesar sailed westward and northward.

10. The natives, looking southward, saw Caesar approaching.

11. Britain is half as large again as Ireland.

12. They call the island which lies midway between Britain and Ireland Mona.

13. The Kentish people (inhabitants of Kent) are very much like the Gauls, and most-of-them live on corn. Those-of-the-interior are more like the Germans, living (as they do) on milk and flesh. The *woad*, with which they all stain their bodies, produces a dark blue color. In war they are of a horrible appearance and go (*esse*) with flowing hair.

Exercise 20.

(See Chapters 15 and 16).

1. Our men, having advanced some distance (*aliquantum itineris*), engaged the enemy and drove them into the woods.

2. Again, however, the enemy rushed from the woods and made an attack upon our camp.

3. Caesar sent to the rescue the first cohorts of two legions, but our men became frightened by the enemy's mode of fighting.

4. The enemy, after killing a military tribune, broke through and fled.

5. In this battle the Britons would fall back a little way, leap from their chariots and fight on foot.

6. In constant succession they would relieve one another so that they were always fresh.

Exercise 21.

(See Chapter 17).

1. Next day our men were provoked to battle by the enemy, who displayed themselves on the hills.

2. Three legions and all the cavalry had been sent by Caesar for the purpose of foraging.

3. An attack was made upon the enemy by our men.

4. The enemy having been repulsed by this attack, were driven headlong by the cavalry.

5. A great number of them were slain.

6. No opportunity was given them of making a stand or fighting.

Exercise 22.

(See Chapter 18).

1. Caesar had ascertained their plans. Having ascertained their plans.

2. Having led his army to the Thames, he observed that this river was fordable only in one place.

3. Large forces had been drawn up on the other bank, which moreover had been protected by stakes both fixed in front and driven down beneath the water.

4. The cavalry was sent forward and the legions were ordered to follow up.

5. The enemy could not withstand the attack of the legions.

6. Having quit the banks they committed themselves to flight.

Exercise 23.

(See Chapter 19).

1. Cassivellaunus laid aside all hope of keeping up the struggle and disbanded his forces.

2. With a few however he watched the movements of the Romans from neighboring (*proximus*) hills.

3. Our army will make its way through these regions.

4. He learned that Caesar would direct his course with a view to plundering and devastating.

5. This fear prevented the Romans from spreading (*eicere se*) over the fields too freely.

6. Caesar did not suffer his (men) to depart too far.

7. Having devastated the land and made fires he kept (*retineo*) his men in camp.

8. By these things we can injure the Britons most and no harm can be done us (it-cannot-be-harmed).

Exercise 24.

(See Chapter 20).

1. Mandubratius came from the Trinobantes to Caesar on the continent.

2. He knew (*intellego*) that his own father, who had held the sovereignty, had been slain.

3. The Trinobantes, having sent envoys, surrender to Caesar.

4. We will surrender to you and do your bidding.

5. We ask you to protect our young chief.

6. He who had been-at-the-head-of the state (*praesum*, with dat.) had been slain.

7. Caesar sent them (a man) to take charge (use Relative of Purpose).

8. He promised to send them (some one) to hold authority.

Exercise 25.

(See Chapter 21).

1. Now that this state has been protected (use perf. participle and abl. abs.) the remaining (ones) will send embassies and surrender.

2. Not far distant is a town into which men and cattle will gather.

3. Impassable woods had been fortified by ramparts and trenches.

4. Thither they assemble for the purpose of avoiding Caesar.

5. When the enemy had rushed (*se eicere*) out of the town, many were slain.

6. Caesar, having tarried on the island a little while, returned (*se recipere*) to the continent.

Exercise 26.

(See Chapter 22).

1. Four kings preside over Kent.

2. These kings gathering an army suddenly assaulted the camp.

3. Caesar learned that his (men) had made a rally and that many of the enemy had been slain.

4. Cassivellaunus heard that his territories had been ravaged.

5. This battle had been reported to Cassivellaunus.

6. Caesar knew that he could easily drag out the remaining part of the summer.

7. I enjoin upon you not to hurt my allies (*socii*).

Exercise 27.

(See Chapter 23).

1. Having led his army to the naval camp, he launched the ships.

2. Caesar carried back his soldiers and prisoners from Britain in two trips.

3. The ships, after carrying over the first lot, were returning (being sent back) along with the seventy ships built by Labienus.

4. A storm having arisen (*coorior*) very few of these reached (their) destination.

5. Caesar waited some time for these, and then (*deinde*) stowing his men more closely, he crossed in one night with the second lot. Thus (*ita*) was concluded Caesar's second war with the Britons.

Exercise 28.

(See Chapter 24).

1. When Caesar had returned to the continent he stationed his eight legions, for the purpose of wintering, in several (different) states.

2. This he was compelled to do by the scarcity of corn.

3. Quintus Cicero, brother of Marcus the orator, was sent with one legion into the Nervii.

4. One legion, over which Sabinus and Cotta were in command, was ordered to winter among the Eburones.

5. Along with this legion five other cohorts were stationed.

Exercise 29.

(See Chapter 25).

1. The kingdom of the Carnutes had been restored by Caesar to Tasgetius.

2. He was slain by his enemies in the third year of his reign.

3. This occurrence having been reported to Caesar, he sent Plancus into this state for-the-purpose-of (*ad*) wintering there and apprehending the slayers of Tasgetius (those who had slain).

4. Meanwhile all his lieutenants, to whom legions had been assigned, informed him that they had reached their winter quarters.

Exercise 30.

(See Chapters 26 and 27).

1. Within fifteen days a revolt broke out among the Eburones at the instigation of the two chieftains (the two chieftains being instigators).

2. Our men gained an advantage in a cavalry fight and the enemy withdrew from the camp.

3. Then the enemy said they wished to hold a conference and to settle the dispute.

4. In this conference Ambiorix said that he owed gratitude to Caesar, and had attacked the camp not by his own will but by the compulsion of the state.

5. He urged (*suadēre ut*) the lieutenants (Dat.) to lead out their men and hasten to Labienus.

Exercise 31.

(See Chapters 28-31).

1. These things having been laid before Cotta and Sabinus, a great dispute arose.

2. Cotta wished to remain in the camp and await reinforcements from Caesar. Sabinus thought they ought to depart (use Gerundive).

3. The matter having been prolonged till midnight, the opinion of Cotta was overborne (*supero*) by Sabinus.

4. At day-break they left camp.

Exercise 32.

(See Chapters 32-35).

1. The enemy placed an ambuscade in a valley.

2. When our column had advanced into this valley, the enemy made an attack on front and rear and threw them into great confusion (*magno opere perturbare*).

3 In this battle, Sabinus, who had been the promoter of the departure from camp, acted timidly; Cotta alone discharged the duties of commander.

4. Sabinus had foreseen none of those things that happened ; Cotta had thought-of (*cogito*) everything.

5. The Romans, abandoning (perf. part.) their baggage, formed (*consisto*) into a circle.

6. The barbarians, thinking that all things depended upon victory, made no attempt (*non conari*) to seize the plunder left by the Roman soldiers, but hurled missiles from afar. Whenever the Romans charged (pluperf. ind.), they would retire.

7. Then (*deinde*) when the Romans were returning to the circle, they would surround them.

8. Thus they fought from early dawn till two o'clock in the afternoon.

Exercise 33.

(See Chapters 36-37).

1. Titurius sent a messenger (*nuntius*) to the leader of the enemy and asked him to spare the Romans.

2. Ambiorix replied that Sabinus might (it was permitted to), if he wished, come to a conference (Supine of Purpose).

3. When Sabinus had asked Cotta to withdraw from the battle in company with him, and confer with the Gallic chieftain, Cotta refused to go (said he would not).

4. Sabinus went, several tribunes and centurions following him.

5. These, having thrown away their arms, are surrounded and slain.

6. The enemy, again charging upon the ranks of the Romans, slew Cotta.

7. A few of the Romans who had returned to the camp slew themselves.

8. Sabinus was informed of what had happened by soldiers who escaped through the woods.

Exercise 34.

(See Chapters 38-40.)

1. After slaying Sabinus and Cotta, Ambiorix stirred up the Nervii to crush (*opprimo*) Cicero and his legion.

2. All hope of the Nervii and their alliies depended on quickness.

3. Cicero however held out throughout the first day.

4. Having dispatched a letter to Caesar, he built (*excito*) many towers with great speed on the rampart of the camp.

5. Next day, when the camp had been assaulted by the enemy and the trench filled up (*use abl. absol.*), our men again resisted bravely.

6. For several days thereafter they held out.

Exercise 35.

(See Chapters 41-43.)

1. Then, when several chieftains of the Nervii had come into Cicero's camp and were urging (*persuadeo*) him to leave for other parts, he replied that he could not accept terms from them (when) under arms.

2. The Nervii thought that, when he had left camp, they would easily crush his whole army and kill him.

3. Cicero's reply having been received, they surrounded his camp with rampart and trench and hoped that they would thus compel (*cogo*) him to surrender.

4. On the seventh day, they again attacked the camp and brought into action towers, pent-houses and scaling ladders (use only one verb).

5. But so great was the valour of our men that on this day also the enemy were repulsed, many of (=out of) their number being wounded and slain.

Exercise 36.

(See Chapters 45-48.)

1. Several messengers having been sent in vain, a slave, who was a Gaul, brought a letter to Caesar.

2. Caesar, learning of Cicero's danger, immediately sends messengers to Crassus, Fabius and Labienus and bids them come with their legions to Cicero's camp.

3. Crassus and Fabius do as they were ordered, but Labienus sends a letter in which he describes (*prescribo*) his own danger and says he cannot (*nego*) leave his winter camp.

4. Caesar, with the two legions which he had received from Crassus and Fabius, hastens by forced marches into the territories of the Nervii.

5. A Gallic horseman takes a letter from Caesar to Cicero but fearing the Nervii, throws it tied to a spear, into the camp.

6. The spear stuck to a tower and the letter was not observed before the third day.

7. Cicero calling a meeting of the soldiers, reads (*recito*) the letter and great is the joy of all when Caesar's approach is learned.

Exercise 37.

(See Chapters 49-52.)

1. Cicero asks from Vertico the man who brought the letter to Caesar's camp.

2. Give me a soldier whom I may send with this letter.

3. At midnight the letter was brought to Caesar and he hastened to set out towards the enemy.

4. The place where he encamped was as favorable as possible, but the camp which he fortified was as contracted as possible.

5. The valleys can easily be crossed by this route.

6. Caesar the next day, by a pretence of fear, enticed the enemy to battle in front of the camp in a most unfavorable place.

7. Some were tearing down the rampart with their hands, some were filling up the ditches.

8. But Caesar ordered a sally to be made and the cavalry to be let loose.

9. The enemy did not resist and large numbers of them were cut down (*occīdo*).

10. Caesar then pushed on to the camp of Cicero and entered (*intro, are*) it to the great joy ("with great joy") of the soldiers.

Exercise 38.

(See Chapters 53-55.)

1. In nine hours word-was-brought (*perfero*, used impersonally) to Labienus that Caesar had defeated the Nervii and had entered Cicero's camp.

2. Frightened by this news, Indutiomarus fled by night with all his forces without attacking the camp of Labienus (use abl. abs.).

3. Caesar, sending back Fabius, remained throughout the rest of that winter with his army in the vicinity of Samarobriva.

4. Some of the Gauls were held to their allegiance by intimidation and some by advice, but nearly all the states were suspected by Caesar (*objects of suspicion to*).

5. Indutiomarus all this winter kept trying to stir up the Germans, but was not however (use *neque*) able to persuade them to cross the Rhine.

6. Many Gauls, however, he succeeded in (*efficio ut*) inducing to flock to his standard (*concurro ad.*)

Exercise 39.

(See Chapters 56-58.)

1. Indutiomarus, calling an armed council, delivered a speech and declared his intention of attacking Labienus' camp (use only one verb).

2. Labienus kept to his camp and Indutiomarus came every day and tried to increase his fear.

3. At last Labienus, having admitted certain Gallic horsemen and strengthened the idea that he was afraid (*the impression of fear*) suddenly ordered a sally and let loose all his cavalry.

4. Fortune smiled on (*comprobo*) his plans, for Indutiomarus was slain and all his army was put to flight.

5. Learning these things, the Nervii and Eburones who had assembled, dispersed, and Gaul became more quiet.

EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION

BASED ON BOOK VI.

Exercise 1.

(See Chapter 1.)

1. A greater disturbance was expected by Caesar.

2. A levy was held through the lieutenants, Silanus, Reginus, and Sextius.

3. The pro-consul, Pompeius, who was remaining near the city with his troops had raised soldiers in Cisalpine Gaul.

4. These he ordered to set out to Caesar because (*quod*) Caesar had asked it.

5. Great now (*iam*) appeared the resources of the Romans, and the loss of the previous (*prior*) war was soon repaired.

6. This was granted by Pompey to Caesar.

7. What loss had been sustained at that time ?

8. Winter was now ended. Caesar had doubled the number of the cohorts that had been lost by Titurius.

Exercise 2.

(See Chapters 1-2.)

Abl. Absol.

1. The leader of the Treveri had been slain by Labienus. Their leader having been slain, the Treveri conferred the command upon his kinsmen.

2. Having tempted the nearest Germans, they were unable to stir them up.

3. After attaching Ambiorix to themselves, they prepared for war.

4. When the Germans had been stirred up, Caesar began-to-think (imperf.) of war.

Acc. with Infin.

5. Caesar learned that the command had been delegated to the relatives of Indutiomarus, that the Germans were being tempted, and that the Nervii were preparing war.

6. All the Germans are under arms, and are not coming in-response-to his command.

Gerundive.

7. War has been prepared by Caesar. War has to be prepared by Caesar.

8. The farther Germans must be tempted by us.

9. The Treveri thought they should tempt the farther Germans.

10. A levy must be held by me. Caesar thought a levy should be held by himself.

11. Having held a levy, he led four cohorts against the Nervii.

Exercise 3.

(See Chapter 3.)

1. Winter was not yet ended. The four nearest cohorts had been assembled. The Nervii could not assemble. A great number of men and cattle were (say *was*) captured and their lands were ravaged.

2. Hostages having been given by the Nervii, Caesar's legions were led back by him into winter quarters.

3. Early in the spring a council of the Gauls was proclaimed.

4. Thither came three tribes ; the remainder said they would not come.

5. This was the beginning of war.

Exercise 4.

(See Chapter 4.)

Present Participle.

1. Caesar's arrival was learnt by Acco (gen. *Accōnis*).

2. The Senones tried to gather into their towns, but Caesar was upon them before they could do so.

3. The Treveri, (while) attempting to assemble, learnt of Caesar's approach.

4. To the Gauls (while) assembling, word was brought that Caesar was close at hand.

5. The Aedui, asking pardon on behalf of the Nervii, obtain (it) (*impetro*) from Caesar.

Exercise 5.

(See Chapter 4.)

Gerund and Gerundive.

1. Ambassadors came for the purpose of making excuses (*excuso, are*).

2. By entreaty (gerund of *deprecor*) they obtain pardon.

3. These ambsasadors are to be guarded.

4. I hand them over to you to be guarded.

5. Soldiers were sent for the purpose of guarding the hostages.

Utor.

6. Caesar used Gallic horse-soldiers.

7. The Gauls employed excuse-making.

Exercise 6.

(See Chapter 5.)

1. Cavarinus set out with him. He ordered the army to set out with him.

2. I have settled these things, and I am positive the enemy will not engage in battle.

3. Marshes and woods protected (*munio*) the Menapii.

4. There is friendship between you and me.

5. This support (*auxilium*) must be taken away from Ambiorix. (What case does *detraho* govern?)

6. Having taken away these supports, I will assail (*lacesso*) the chieftain himself.

7. Ambiorix will despair-of safety and hide among the Germans.

8. This plan has been entered upon. All the baggage has been sent.

9. Two legions have been ordered to proceed to Labienus.

10. Five lightly equipped legions set out with Caesar himself against the enemy.

Two meanings of cogo.

11. The Menapii were compelled to take refuge in the woods.

12. No force (*manus*) had been collected by them.

Exercise 7.

(See Chapter 6.)

1. Caesar divided up his forces with his lieutenants.

2. Bridges were quickly built (*efficio*) and villages were burnt.

3. The Menapii were compelled to send ambassadors concerning peace.

What verbs are like utor?

4. Caesar gained possession of many villages.

5. The soldiers, having gained possession of the bridge, set fire to the buildings.

6. Caesar, leaving (perf. participle) Commius, had set out into the territories of the Treveri.

Exercise 8.

(See Chapter 7.)

Vivid present with **Dum.**

1. While Caesar was doing these things, the Treveri gathered large forces.

2. While the Treveri were preparing war, Caesar overcame the Menapii.

3. The enemy attacked (*adorior*)) Labienus. Two legions, sent by Caesar, were coming.

Acc. with Infin.

4. Caesar learnt that large forces had been gathered by the Treveri.

5. Labienus had learnt that the Gauls would pitch camp and await the Germans.

6. There will be no opportunity of fighting-a-pitched-battle.

7. I hope Caesar will come.

8. The Gauls thought that Labienus would not cross the river.

9. I will move camp early to-morrow morning.

10. Some of the Gauls in Labienus' army favored the enemy.

11. It was reported (*defero*) to the Gauls that Labienus had broken-up camp at day-break.

Exercise 9.

(See Chapter 8.)

1. The enemy had exhorted one another not to let the Romans slip out of their hands.

2. It is tedious (*longus*) to wait for the Germans. The Romans are thoroughly frightened. Our dignity does not permit it.

3. Shall we not dare to attack such small forces? Do we hesitate to cross the river?

4. Labienus suspected that the Gauls would cross.

5. The Roman soldiers displayed great valor and imagined that Caesar was looking on in person.

6. Standards having been turned about and cavalry having been stationed on the flanks, our men raised a shout. Having quickly let fly their javelins at the Gauls, they put the whole band (*manus*) to rout.

Exercise 10.

Pres. Participle—Perf. Pass. Participle—Deponent Perf. Participle.

1. Many Gauls, while seeking the woods, were slain by Roman soldiers.

2. The Gauls, having sought the woods, heard that the Germans had betaken themselves home.

3. A few were captured. The Romans pursued (*consector*) the remainder.

4. Having captured a large number and pursued the remainder they returned (*se recipere*) into camp.

5. He learned that some Gauls had accompanied (*comitor*) the Germans.

6. The Gauls, accompanying (perf. part.) the Germans, crossed the river into Germany.

Exercise 11.

(*See Chapter 9.*)

Cum, Postquam, Ubi, and Perf. Participle.

1. When Caesar had come into the Treveri (use *cum*).

2. When he had crossed the Rhine (use *postquam*).

3. After sending reinforcements, they received Ambiorix to themselves, ((a) perf. participle, (b) *cum*, (c) *postquam*).

4. When they saw Caesar coming (use *ubi;* see previous chapter).

5. Having determined on these things (translate in three ways).

6. Having led his army over, he built a bridge.

7. When the bridge had been completed by the soldiers, a strong guard was left.

8. No disturbance having arisen, he advanced into Germany.

Exercise 12.

(*See Chapter 9.*)

"*purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant.*"

1. These are the ambassadors who inform (*doceo*) Caesar.

2. Ambassadors were sent to inform Caesar ((a) with *causā*, (b) with *ad*, (c) with *qui*).

3. Ambassadors came to clear themselves ((a) with *ad*, (b) with *qui*).

4. Caesar sent (men) to enquire the way into the Suebi.

5. The apology (*satisfactio*) of the Ubii having been received, he spared their state (what case does *parco* govern?)

6. The Ubii came for the purpose of making apology.

Exercise 13.

(See Chapter 10.)

1. The Suebi are gathering all their forces into this place and are notifying their neighbors (*finitimi*) to do the same.

2. The Romans were informed that the Suebi had collected their (men).

3. Having gathered their forces and received (*accipio*) aid from the other tribes, they waged war upon Caesar (*bellum infero*, with Dat.)

4. They informed Caesar. Caesar having been informed (absolute.)

Iubeo, Impero, Mando.

5. He orders (*iubeo*) the Ubii to bring cattle.

6. He ordered (*impero*, with proper sequence of tense) Labienus to bring his army.

7. He instructs (*mando*) the scout to go among the Suebi.

8. He instructed the scouts to go into the territories of the Suebi.

Indirect Question.

9. What things are being done (*gero*) among the Suebi?

10. He wishes to learn what (sing.) is being done by the Suebi.

11. What (pl.) did the Suebi do (*gero*)?

12. He could not ascertain what the Suebi had done.

13. This was the wood which was called Bacenis.

14. What wood is called Bacenis?

15. It is uncertain (*incertum est*) what wood is called Bacenis.

Exercise 14.

(See Chapter 10.)

All the Suebi, after definite news came, with all the forces they had collected, betook themselves to the remotest parts of their territories. There is a wood there of vast extent. This extends far into the interior and protects the Suebi from injuries on the part of the Cherusci. In this wood the Suebi have determined to await our arrival.

Exercise 15.

(See Chapters 11 and 12.)

1. In what do these nationalities differ from each other?

2. I will set forth in what they differ.

3. Several battles had been fought and all the nobility had been slain.

4. The Aedui gave hostages and were compelled to take an oath in the name of the state.

5. The hostages have been given back and the old dependencies restored.

Exercise 16.

(See Chapters 13 and 14.)

1. In Gaul the common people are of no account.

2. Debt and immense taxes oppress them.

3. The Druids are highly respected among the Gauls.

4. If any one wishes to learn the Druids' system of training, it must be learnt in Britain.

5. In learning verses, the Druids relied on their memory and did not use written characters.

6. Our soul does not perish after death.

Exercise 17.

(See Chapters 15-20.)

1. The Druids hand down learning to the young; the Knights are at the head of the factions.

2. The Gauls worship the same gods, for the most part, as the Romans.

3. They sacrifice animals and human beings.

4. An account is kept of all moneys between husband and wife.

5. In the funerals of their greater (*amplior*) men, slaves, clients and animals specially loved, used to be burned along with their masters.

6. If anyone has heard (*accipio*) anything regarding the public weal, he lays it before the magistrates.

Exercise 18.

(See Chapters 21-22.)

1. Those who have charge of (*praesum*) divine matters are Druids.

2. Caesar has many lieutenants to officer his army (use a *qui* clause).

3. The Germans used to devote themselves to war from boyhood.

4. The races and family groups stay in one place only for one year: the year after, they go to another place (use an adverb).

5. Many reasons can be adduced (*affero*) for this.

6. They thought war ought not to be exchanged for agriculture. (What is the construction with verbs of exchanging?)

7. We will gladly exchange war for peace.

8. The Germans used to build with-a-view-to avoiding the cold.

Exercise 19.

(Chapters 23 and 24.)

1. Their neighbors, driven from their lands, had retired and no one (do not say *et nemo*) dared to make a stand near (them).

2. The magistrates, who have charge of war, have power of life and death.

3. A leader is chosen to take charge of the war (use a *qui* clause).

4. Magistrates are chosen to dispense justice (*ius dico*) (use a *qui* clause).

5. Brigandage is not held to be a disgrace amongst the Germans.

6. The Gauls formerly (*antea*) surpassed the Germans in bravery.

Exercise 20.

(Chapters 25-28.)

1. Gaul starts at the Pyrenees (*Pyrenæi montes*) and extends to the Rhine.

2. There is no one who has visited the beginning of this forest (*qui* after *nemo est=ut is*).

3. Many kinds of wild beasts are produced in this forest.

4. Of these the following are those that Caesar mentions: the reindeer, the elk, the wild ox.

5. The elk is like the goat in shape and color, but is a little larger.

6. It never lies down to rest, and, if from any accident it has fallen, it cannot rise.

7. A tree is its couch; against it it leans and thus takes rest.

8. The hunters observe from their foot-prints whither they betake themselves.

9. The wild ox is a little smaller than an elephant, but in shape and color like a bull.

10. Those who kill a wild ox bring the horns as a proof (Dat. of Purpose) and gain great praise.

11. Men cannot tame these, even when caught quite young.

12. They use the horns as drinking-cups.

Exercise 21.

(See Chapters 29-32.)

Cum and Postquam.

1. When (*cum*) the Suebi had betaken themselves far into the woods, Caesar did not advance, but led back his army and broke down the far end of his bridge.

2. When (*postquam*) he had broken down the bridge and left a garrison in a tower which he had constructed, he set out for the purpose of pursuing Ambiorix.

3. Basilus, having been sent forward with the cavalry, almost *(paene)* captured Ambiorix, who escaped while his companions were fighting (use pres. part.) and afterwards ordered his men to look out for themselves.

4. Catuvolcus, king of half the Eburones, poisoned himself.

5. Ambassadors came from two German tribes to entreat Caesar not to wage war upon them (express "to entreat" in five different ways).

6. We had no intention of war (*nihil cogitare de*); and sent no aid to Ambiorix.

7. If you bring back to me (fut. perf. ind.) those who assembled among (*aa*) you, I will not interfere with your territories.

8. The fourteenth legion was left as protection to the town of Aduatuca, and over this legion Quintus Cicero was put in command.

Exercise 22.

(See Chapter 33.)

Having left Cicero with the fourteenth legion in the camp near Aduatuca, he divided his army and gave orders (*impero*) to Labienus to proceed to the Menapii and to Trebonius to proceed to the Aduatuci. These regions were to be laid waste by the two lieutenants. He himself set out to the Scheldt, whither Ambiorix had gone. He said he would be back in seven days and ordered the two lieutenants to return by the same date if possible.

Exercise 23.

(See Chapter 34.)

1. No town defended itself. The Gauls had encamped (*consido*) in hidden glens, or woody places or obstructed marshes.

2. He did not wish to divide (*diduco*) his soldiers and could not take (*duco*) them in a closely packed body through these impassable places. All the neighboring Gauls therefore (*itaque*) were called out for the purpose of (*causā* and gerund) plundering the Eburones and wiping out (*tollo*) the state.

Exercise 24.

(See Chapter 35.)

1. How much can fortune (do) in war? What accidents does she bring?

2. Caesar learned what fortune could (do) in war and what accidents she brought (be careful of Sequence).

3. The Sugambri came from Germany to plunder the Eburones.

4. After ravaging the territories of these, they come to Aduatuca.

5. Here they learn that Caesar has gone to a distance, that all the baggage of his army has been placed in the town, and that Cicero is there with a small garrison.

Exercise 25.

(See Chapters 36-38.)

1. Cicero had been ordered by Caesar to allow no one to leave (*egredior*) the camp. But on the seventh day he sent five cohorts into the neighboring fields to get corn, leaving (perf. part.) only a few sick men and five cohorts behind.

2. When the cohorts had got some distance on their journey (*aliquantum itineris progredior*) and there were now woods between them and the camp, the Sugambri came along (*intervenio*) and endeavored to break into the camp.

3. With difficulty the few Roman soldiers defended the camp.

4. Baculus, a centurion of the first rank, one of (*ex*) the sick men left in the camp, rushed out of his tent and, taking up arms, stood in the gateway. He perished, covered with wounds, but by his courage (*virtus*) the camp was saved.

Exercise 26.

(See Chapter 39.)

Dependent Question.

1. Meanwhile the soldiers who had gone for corn returned. Hearing the shouting and learning the danger, they halted (*consisto*).

2. In how great danger is the camp? You have learnt in what danger it is.

3. What do the centurions direct (*praecipio*)? We are waiting to see what they direct.

4. Where is Caesar? The Germans did not know (*intellego*) where he was.

Exercise 27.

(See Chapter 41.)

1. On the first night after the Germans, despairing of storming the camp, had returned across the Rhine into Germany, C. Volusenus came to the camp with Caesar's cavalry.

2. Cicero's soldiers had thought that the forces of Caesar were destroyed to a man, or that the cavalry alone had escaped (*effugio*).

3. This fear was removed by Caesar's arrival next (*proximus*) day.

Exercise 28.

(See Chapter 43.)

1. Caesar again set out to harass the enemy (translate in four ways).

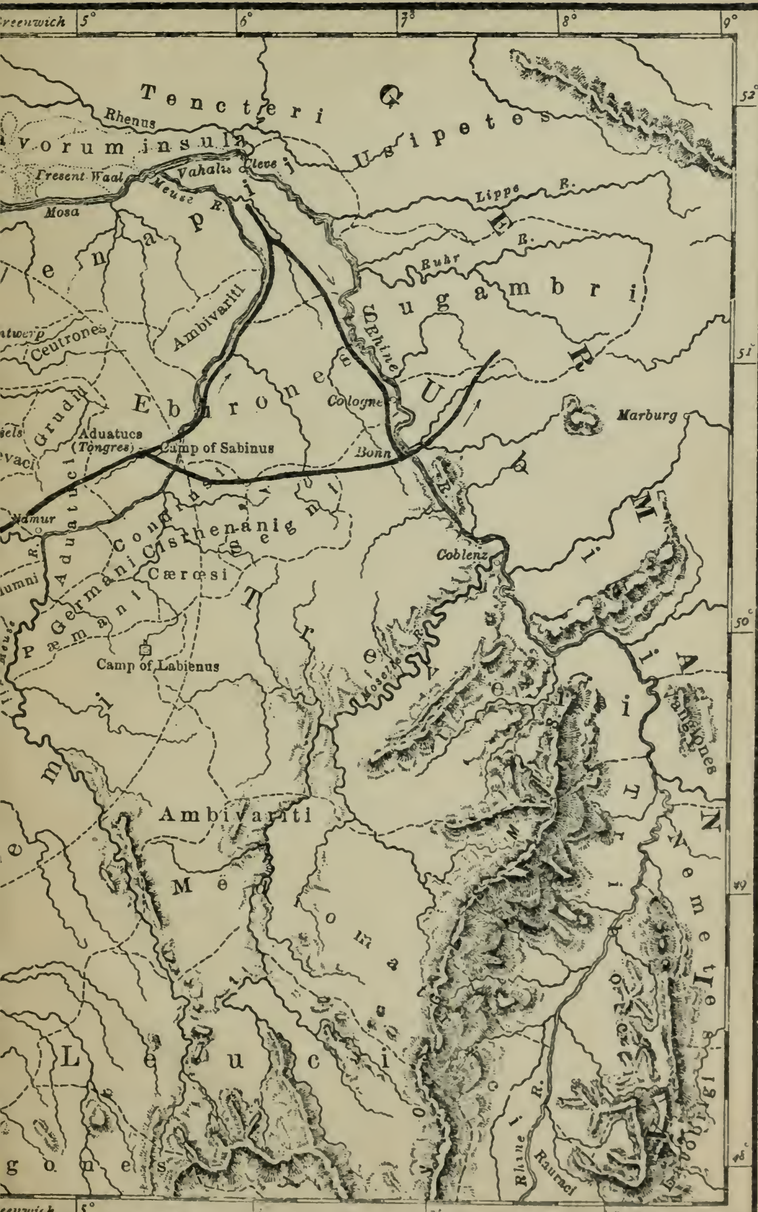
2. All the corn having been consumed or beaten down (*adfligo*) by rains, the forces of Ambiorix were perishing from utter destitution (say "lack of all things.")

3. Ambiorix himself however was eluding pursuit (*se eripere*).

4. At last Caesar leading back his army, held an enquiry regarding the conspiracy, and inflicted the extreme penalty upon Acco (*supplicium gravissimum sumere de*).

5. Leaving two legions among the Treveri, two among the Lingones, and six at Agedincum among the Senones, he set out to Italy to hold court (translate the last phrase in six ways).


Map No. 4.
CAMPAIGNS OF
B.C. 55 and 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type
Modern Names are in Italic Type
BRITANNIA
Tamesis Fl. (Thames)
Cantium
Deal
Dover
Hastings
ENGLISH CHANNEL
NORTH SEA
Sea coast in Cæsar's Time
Calais
Wissant
Portus ulterior (Ambleteuse)
Itius portus (Boulogne)
Morini
Lys R.
Escaut R.
Camp of Fabius
St. Pol
Atrebates
Nemetocenna (Arras)
Ambiani
Cambrai
Sambre
Nervii
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Camp of Trebonius
Veromandui
Bellovaci
Caletes
Bratuspantium (Breteuil)
Camp of Crassus
Rouen
Veliocasses
Camp of Plancus
Bibrax (Vieux Laon)
Suessiones
Noviodunum (Soissons)
Lexovii
Lisieux
Aul. Eburovices
Evreux
Seine R.
Marne R.
Parisii
Lutetia (Paris)
Remi
Esuvii
Camp of Roscius
Carnutes
Chartres
Melodunum (Melun)
Senones
Seine
Agedincum (Sens)
Aul. Cenomani
le Mans
Long. East


5°
6°
7°
8°
9°
52°
51°
50°
49
48°
Tencteri
Rhenus
Usipetes
Present Waal
Vahalis
Cleve
Mosa
Meuse R.
Lippe R.
Ruhr R.
Sugambri
Ambivariti
Ceutrones
Rhine
Eburones
Cologne
Marburg
Grudii
Aduatuca (Tongres)
Camp of Sabinus
Bonn
Namur
Aduatuci
Condrusi
Segni
Cisrhenani
Pæmani
Cærœsi
Coblenz
Camp of Labienus
Treveri
Moselle R.
Vangiones
Ambivariti
Mediomatrici
Nemetes
Leuci
Rhine R.
Rauraci



0°
Longitude
East
1°
from
Greenwich
2°
32°
NORTH
SEA
Bury-St. Edmunds
Cambridge
Bedford
Cenimagni
Sudbury
Ipswich
Aldburgh
Orford
Harwich
Colchester
Trinobantes
St. Albans
Hertford
Chelmsford
Maldon
Cassi
Lea R.
Roding R.
Crouch R.
Thames R.
London
Windsor
Sunbury
Kingston
Bromley
Croydon
Keston
Ancalites
Rochester
Maidstone
Canterbury
Littlebourn
Sandwich
Goodwin Sands
Deal
Walmer Castle
Dover
South Foreland
Wye
Ashford
Folkstone
Guildford
Dorking
Westerham
Medway R.
Darent R.
Wey R.
R. Colne
Mole R.



Map No. 5.
BRITAIN
IN
CAMPAIGNS OF
B. C. 55 & 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.
1 ST. CAMPAIGN
2 ND. CAMPAIGN
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Arundel
Brighton
Hastings
Portus Ulterior
(Ambleteuse)
Portus Itius
(Boulogne)
Morini
Canche R.
Authie R.
Ambiani
Somme
Bellovaci
Caletes
Dieppe
Bethune R.
Neufchatel
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Bratuspantium
(Breteuil)
Longitude East from Greenwich